Planning Guidelines and Design Standards for Checked Baggage Inspection Systems

Version 1.0
October 10, 2007
Planning Guidelines and Design Standards for Checked Baggage Inspection Systems

Version 1.0

October 10, 2007
NOTICE

This document is distributed under the sponsorship of the Transportation Security Administration of the U.S. Department of Homeland Security in the interest of information exchange. The U.S. Government assumes no liability for the contents or use.

This document does not create regulatory requirements. There are recommendations and guidelines contained in this document that might be considered highly beneficial in one airport environment while being virtually impossible to implement at another airport. The purpose of the document is to provide as extensive a list of options, ideas, and suggestions as possible for the airport architect, designer, planner and engineer to choose from when first considering security requirements in the early planning and design of new or renovated airport facilities.

This document has been formatted for double sided printing.

VERSION HISTORY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Modifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>December 29, 2006</td>
<td>Original submittal by BSIS Technical Team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>June 21, 2007</td>
<td>Update based on TSA technical review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>July 12, 2007</td>
<td>Update based on TSA program office review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>October 10, 2007</td>
<td>Update based on SSI and final TSA review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong> INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>1-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Background</td>
<td>1-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Previous Versions of Planning and Design Guidelines</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Purpose</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Scope</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Organization</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 Referenced Documents and Models</td>
<td>1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.1 Recommended Security Guidelines for Airport Planning, Design and Construction, Revised July 2006</td>
<td>1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.2 Integrated Deployment Model</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 Next Steps</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.1 Design Issues</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.2 Implementation Issues</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.3 Post-Implementation Issues</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4 Funding Issues</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong> GUIDELINES CONTEXT AND PRIMARY OBJECTIVES</td>
<td>2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Need for BSIS Guidelines</td>
<td>2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Emphasis and Objectives of Guidelines</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1 Lowest-Cost Solutions</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2 Operational Performance Standards</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.3 Avoiding Common Pitfalls</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.4 Appropriate Initial System Sizing</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.5 Equipment Redundancy and Contingency Operations</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.6 Accommodating Growth</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.7 Flexibility</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.8 Stakeholder Involvement</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.9 Design Review and Approval Process</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>3</strong> PLANNING AND DESIGN PROCESS</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Roles and Responsibilities</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Project Stakeholders</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2 Project Sponsor</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3 Integrated Local Design Team</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4 TSA Headquarters</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5 Government-Industry Working Group</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.6 Summary</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CONTENTS (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>PLANNING AND DESIGN PROCESS (continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Project Phases ......................................................... 3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2 Pre-Design ............................................................. 3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.2 Schematic Design ................................................... 3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.3 Detailed Design ..................................................... 3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.3.1 30% Design Sub-Phase ............................................ 3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.3.2 70% Design Sub-Phase ............................................ 3-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.3.3 100% Design Sub-Phase .......................................... 3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.4 Construction Phase .................................................. 3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.5 Testing and Commissioning ........................................ 3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.2.6 Project Closeout Phase ............................................. 3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Summary .............................................................................. 3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>DESIGN STANDARDS ........................................................................ 4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>General Design Requirements .................................................. 4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1.1 Security ......................................................................... 4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1.2 Efficiency ....................................................................... 4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1.3 Passenger Level-Of-Service .......................................... 4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1.4 Cost-Effectiveness ....................................................... 4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1.5 Concept of Operation .................................................... 4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1.6 Proper System Selection and Sizing .................................. 4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Specific Design Requirements ............................................... 4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.1 BHS Capacity ............................................................... 4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.2 Screening Throughput Capacity ...................................... 4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.3 Bag Time in System ....................................................... 4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.4 OSR Decision Time ........................................................ 4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.5 BHS Tracking ID ............................................................ 4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.5.1 Positive Bag Tracking ................................................ 4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.5.2 Error Bags at Checked Baggage Resolution Area (CBRA) ........ 4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.6 Bag Tag Identification .................................................. 4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.7 Conveyor Control .......................................................... 4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.7.1 Dynamic Braking ......................................................... 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.7.2 Variable Frequency Drives .......................................... 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.7.3 Gradual Conveyor Speed Transitions ................................. 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.8 Avoidance of Steep Conveyor Slopes ................................... 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.9 Divert and Merge ........................................................... 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.10 Conveyable Items ........................................................ 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.10.1 Proper Handling of Oversize Bags ................................. 4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2.10.2 Proper Handling of Out-of-Gauge Bags ............................ 4-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESIGN STANDARDS (continued)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.11</td>
<td>Fail Safe Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.12</td>
<td>Image Quality (IQ) Test Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.13</td>
<td>Bag Orientation/Positioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.14</td>
<td>Bag Jam Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.15</td>
<td>BHS Displays at CBRA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.16</td>
<td>Alarmed Bag Images at CBRA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.17</td>
<td>Placement of Reinsertion Points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.18</td>
<td>Purge Line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.19</td>
<td>Recirculation Loops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.20</td>
<td>Power Turns after EDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.21</td>
<td>Non-Powered Rollers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.22</td>
<td>Draft Curtains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.23</td>
<td>Accessibility of EDS Machines for Operation, Maintenance and Replacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.24</td>
<td>Location for Staging Equipment Prior to Installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.25</td>
<td>CBIS Reporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTEM TYPES AND SCREENING EQUIPMENT</td>
<td>5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Screening System Configurations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.1</td>
<td>System Type 1: High-Volume In-Line CBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.2</td>
<td>System Type 2: Medium-Volume In-Line CBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.3</td>
<td>System Type 3: Mini In-Line CBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.4</td>
<td>System Type 4: Stand-Alone EDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.5</td>
<td>System Type 5: Stand-Alone ETD Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.5.1</td>
<td>Primary Screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.5.2</td>
<td>Alarm Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>EDS Certification Process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.1</td>
<td>Non-Detection Related Assessments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.2</td>
<td>Detection-Related Assessments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Status of Future Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAGGAGE SCREENING DEMAND</td>
<td>6-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Categorization into Screening Zones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Checked Baggage Flow Generation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1</td>
<td>List of Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2</td>
<td>Determination of the ADPM per Screening Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.3</td>
<td>Flight Schedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4</td>
<td>Airline Load Factors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAGGAGE SCREENING DEMAND (continued)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Origin/Destination and Connecting Passenger Percentages</td>
<td>6-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earliness Distributions</td>
<td>6-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateness Distributions</td>
<td>6-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checked Bags per Passenger</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calibration of Flight Schedule-Driven Demand</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Baggage Flow Projections</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design Year for Equipment Requirements</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accommodating Traffic Growth after the Design Year</td>
<td>6-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAGGAGE SCREENING EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS</td>
<td>7-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requirements During the Pre-Design Phase</td>
<td>7-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS Equipment Requirements</td>
<td>7-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS Equipment Redundancy</td>
<td>7-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSR Station Requirements</td>
<td>7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station Requirements</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment Requirements During the Schematic and Detailed Design Phases</td>
<td>7-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Simulation Standards</td>
<td>7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Standards</td>
<td>7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistical Distributions</td>
<td>7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTINGENCIES</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contingency Planning Process</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Considerations</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design Recommendations to Facilitate Contingency Planning</td>
<td>8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out-of-Gauge Diverter—Bypass to ETD</td>
<td>8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment Redundancy</td>
<td>8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programming Logic</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision for Manual Conveyance of Baggage</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency and Standby Power</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative TSA Screening Measures</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure Types and Mitigation Measures</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-Duration Failures</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-Duration Failures</td>
<td>8-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-Duration Failures</td>
<td>8-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluation of Contingency Alternatives</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Principles for Evaluation</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini In-Line System Example</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>DEVELOPMENT AND EVALUATION OF ALTERNATIVES</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Developing Alternatives</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.1</td>
<td>Airline Grouping Assignments (Screening Zones)</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.2</td>
<td>Tradeoffs between Screening Systems</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.3</td>
<td>Tradeoffs between Upfront Capacity and Incremental Capacity</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>Estimating Life-Cycle Costs</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1</td>
<td>Analysis Assumptions</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1.1</td>
<td>Life-Cycle Cost Analysis Period</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1.2</td>
<td>Equipment Life-Cycle</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1.3</td>
<td>Construction Period</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1.4</td>
<td>Constant Dollar Cost</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2</td>
<td>Life-Cycle Costs to Consider</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3</td>
<td>Estimating Capital Costs</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.1</td>
<td>Screening Equipment Purchase Price</td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.2</td>
<td>Screening Equipment Direct Installation Costs</td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.3</td>
<td>Screening Equipment Refurbishment and Upgrade Costs</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.4</td>
<td>Screening Equipment Replacement Costs</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.5</td>
<td>Cost of EDS Removal</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.6</td>
<td>EDS Residual Value and Disposal Cost</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3.7</td>
<td>Costs of Required Building and BHS Modifications</td>
<td>9-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4</td>
<td>Estimating O&amp;M Costs</td>
<td>9-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4.1</td>
<td>Screening Equipment Maintenance Costs</td>
<td>9-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4.2</td>
<td>Screening Equipment Operating Costs</td>
<td>9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4.3</td>
<td>Incremental BHS Maintenance Costs</td>
<td>9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4.4</td>
<td>Incremental BHS Operating Costs</td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.5</td>
<td>Estimating Staffing Costs</td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.5.1</td>
<td>TSA Screener and Supervisor Costs</td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.5.2</td>
<td>Incremental Costs for Baggage Porters and Other Airport/Airline Staff</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>Selecting the Preferred Alternative</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDICES

Appendix A  Introduction to In-Line Checked Baggage Inspection Systems
Appendix B  Generic Examples of Checked Baggage Inspection Systems
Appendix C  Pre-Design Phase Case Study—Oakland International Airport
Appendix D  Checked Baggage Inspection System Requirements
           D1 – Design Performance Requirements
           D2 – Commissioning and Evaluation Requirements
Appendix E  Example Contingency Plan
TABLES

5-1 Potential High-Volume EDS Machines—Equipment Assumptions ..........  5-5
5-2 Potential Medium-Volume EDS Machines—Equipment Assumptions....  5-7
5-3 Potential Mini In-Line EDS Machines—Equipment Assumptions ..........  5-11
5-4 Potential Stand-Alone EDS Machines—Equipment Assumptions ..........  5-15
5-5 Potential ETD Machines—Equipment Assumptions .............................  5-19
5-6 Expected Availability of Checked Baggage Screening Equipment……… 5-22
6-1 Summary of Input Data Needs and Potential Data Sources .............  6-10
9-1 Purchase Price of Checked Baggage Screening Equipment ...............  9-7
9-2 Components of Direct Installation Costs .........................................  9-8
9-3 Direct Installation Cost of Screening Equipment ...............................  9-9
9-4 EDS Refurbishment and Upgrade Options ........................................  9-10
9-5 Infrastructure Modification Costs for EDS Replacement ....................  9-11
9-6 Average Cost of Facility Modifications and Infrastructure .................  9-13
9-7 Screening Equipment Maintenance Cost Assumptions ......................  9-14
9-8 Screening Equipment Power Consumption .......................................  9-15
9-9 Estimated Annual Incremental BHS Maintenance Costs .................  9-19
### FIGURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-1</td>
<td>Summary of the Design Process Phases</td>
<td>2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-1</td>
<td>Summary of Responsibilities during the Design Process</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-2</td>
<td>Summary of Planning and Design Process</td>
<td>3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-1</td>
<td>Schematic Visualization of a High-Volume In-Line System</td>
<td>5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-2</td>
<td>Schematic Visualization of a Medium-Volume In-Line System</td>
<td>5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-3</td>
<td>Schematic Visualization of a Mini In-Line System</td>
<td>5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-4</td>
<td>Schematic Visualization of a Mini In-Line System with Light Integration (S-Configuration)</td>
<td>5-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>Schematic Visualization of a Stand-Alone EDS</td>
<td>5-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>Schematic Visualization of a Stand-Alone ETD System</td>
<td>5-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>Zone Hierarchy Representation</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>Assumed Screening Zones at Albuquerque International Sunport</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-3</td>
<td>Example Earliness Distributions Before and After 9:00 a.m</td>
<td>6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-4</td>
<td>Example Earliness Distributions for Domestic and International Carriers</td>
<td>6-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-5</td>
<td>Example Lateness Distribution</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>10-Minute ADPM Checked Baggage Flow</td>
<td>7-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-2</td>
<td>Approach to Modeling System Requirements</td>
<td>7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>System Type Comparison</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACRONYM</th>
<th>ABBREVIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADPM</td>
<td>Average Day of the Peak Month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASAC</td>
<td>Aviation Security Advisory Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASDG-WG</td>
<td>Airport Security Design Guidelines Working Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATO</td>
<td>Airline Ticket Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATR</td>
<td>Automatic Tag Reader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATSA</td>
<td>Aviation and Transportation Security Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDR</td>
<td>Basis of Design Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BHS</td>
<td>Baggage Handling System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BHSO</td>
<td>Baggage Handling System Oversize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMA</td>
<td>Baggage Measurement Array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPH</td>
<td>Bags Per Hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRL</td>
<td>Baggage Reinsertion Line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSIS</td>
<td>Baggage Screening Investment Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBIS</td>
<td>Checked Baggage Inspection System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBRA</td>
<td>Checked Baggage Resolution Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRT</td>
<td>Certification Readiness Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Computerized Tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTO</td>
<td>Chief Technology Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td>Calendar Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBU</td>
<td>Date of Beneficial Use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHS</td>
<td>Department of Homeland Security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DT&amp;E</td>
<td>Developmental Test and Evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBSP</td>
<td>Electronic Baggage Screening Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS</td>
<td>Explosives Detection System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDSO</td>
<td>Explosives Detection System Out-of-Gauge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD</td>
<td>Explosives Trace Detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAA</td>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFY</td>
<td>Federal Fiscal Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIS</td>
<td>Federal Inspection Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSD</td>
<td>Federal Security Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTE</td>
<td>Full-Time Equivalent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAO</td>
<td>Government Accountability Office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS (CONTINUED)

HVAC Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning
IATA International Air Transport Association
ILDT Integrated Local Design Team
ISAT Integrated Site Acceptance Test
IT Information Technology
MES Manual Encode Station
OOG Out-Of-Gauge
O&M Operating and Maintenance
OMB Office of Management and Budget
OSR On-Screen Resolution
PEC Photoelectric Cell
PLC Programmable Logic Controller
RFID Radio Frequency Identification
ROM Rough Order-of-Magnitude
SAT Site Acceptance Test
SOP Standard Operating Procedures
SQT System Qualification Testing
SSTP Site Specific Test Plan
TAF Terminal Area Forecast
TCU Threat Containment Unit
TSA Transportation Security Administration
TSL Transportation Security Laboratory
VFD Variable Frequency Drive
DEFINITIONS

CHECKED BAGGAGE INSPECTION SYSTEM (CBIS) – The entire system from Ticket Counter and Curbside lines, through the EDS screening area to the Clear and Sortation lines that lead to the bag make-up area.

CBIS CONVEYOR LINE DEFINITIONS

CBRA LINE – The conveyors that transport baggage from the OSR line to the CBRA removal points.

EDS LINES – The conveyors that transport baggage from diversion off of the Main Line through the EDS machine to diversion onto either the Clear Line or the OSR Line. Also referred to as: spurs, shunts, or subsystems.

INPUT LINES – Any conveyor line that is used for the induction of baggage.

MAIN LINE

PRE-EDS – Conveyor line where input lines are merged to create a main delivery conveyor line that delivers baggage for diversion to individual EDS lines.

POST-EDS - Conveyor line where all EDS Clear lines, which includes Level 1, Level 2, and Level 3 cleared baggage, are merged for transport to the make-up area.

OSR LINES – Lines after the EDS exit tunnel transporting baggage that has not yet received a “Clear” security screening decision. Each individual EDS machine is likely to be connected to individual OSR lines that merge on to a main OSR line that transports baggage to the Level 2 clear/alarm diversion point. On-Screen Resolution is performed on baggage that is traveling on these lines.

PURGE LINE – Conveyor line that connects the Alarmed line beyond the Level 2 decision point with the Main line feeding the group of EDS machines that transports bags off of an EDS line after an EDS machine has faulted. Positive tracking of bags must be maintained. This line could also be utilized when other forms of screening technology are implemented. This is not a recirculation line for lost in track bags.

CLEAR BAG – Any bag that has received a “Clear” security screening decision at Level 1, 2 or 3 security screening.
GROUP OF EDS MACHINES – Two or more EDS machines that are fed by a common Main line.

LOST IN TRACK – A situation when the BHS loses positive tracking of a bag after the bag has (1) been acquired by the BHS and (2) assigned a BHS tracking ID to be positively tracked.

MODELING

HIGH LEVEL FLOW BASED – A deterministic model used to estimate design baggage demand for a CBIS in order to determine equipment and staffing requirements based on baggage flows.

SIMULATION – A software package that enables a stochastic analysis of the CBIS. Simulation models can be visual (with 2-dimensional or 3-dimensional graphics) or non-visual (which generate statistical outputs only). Generally, simulation models for CBIS evaluation will be based on a discrete-event simulation software package. Simulation is used to assess the performance of the system (such as time in system, equipment utilization rates, equipment throughput rates, etc.) based on certain modeling assumptions. Analysis of outputs from the simulation model can provide a statistical validation of performance standards as well as equipment and staffing requirements. Visual outputs can also assist with stakeholder buy-in of the design.

NON-CLEAR BAG – Any bag pre- or post-EDS that has not received a “Clear” security screening decision at Level 1, 2, or 3 screening. (i.e., Alarmed, pending decision, unknown, lost-in-track, etc.).

TRACKING ZONE – Point at which the BHS acquires positive tracking of a bag prior to the EDS (normally at a BMA or ATR) to diversion to a Clear line or to removal for inspection in the CBRA.

UPSTREAM OF EDS – From positive tracking acquisition (normally at a BMA or ATR) to the last conveyor prior to entering the EDS machine.

DOWNSTREAM OF EDS – From the EDS entrance tunnel to diversion to a Clear line or removal for inspection in the CBRA.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The following is a list of members of the Baggage Screening Investment Study Technical Team, who contributed their time and insight into developing these planning guidelines and design standards.

Airport Authorities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jim Crites</td>
<td>Dallas/Fort Worth International Airport Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kevin Dillon</td>
<td>City of Manchester, Aviation Department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeff Fitch</td>
<td>Aviation Division, Port of Seattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan Molloy</td>
<td>Department of Aviation, City of Atlanta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Airlines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John Conlon</td>
<td>Southwest Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fred Clements</td>
<td>Northwest Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rick Garde</td>
<td>JetBlue Airways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mike Golden</td>
<td>Southwest Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve Mayberry</td>
<td>Northwest Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nick Meador</td>
<td>American Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John McDonald</td>
<td>United Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terry Spradlin</td>
<td>Delta Air Lines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Federal Government Agencies and Contractors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amy Becke</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Bernatowicz</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert Gentry</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keith Goll</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khalid Haider</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dave Harder</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stephanie Howlett</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andy Lee</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael Salmen</td>
<td>TSA Security Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert Sheftel</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Smith</td>
<td>Battelle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Baggage Handling System Designers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gary Cline</td>
<td>Siemens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaylloyd Dadyala</td>
<td>Venderlande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthias Frenz</td>
<td>LogPlan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archie Lind</td>
<td>URS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jim Lusche</td>
<td>Swanson Rink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mike Moser</td>
<td>Raytheon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan Stricklin</td>
<td>G&amp;T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larry Studdiford</td>
<td>Cage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sal Terraciano</td>
<td>Cage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vic Thompson</td>
<td>Vic Thompson Company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security Equipment Manufacturers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kevin Coffey</td>
<td>L-3 Communications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steven Hills</td>
<td>General Electric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael Lanzaro</td>
<td>L-3 Communications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve Pelham</td>
<td>Reveal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cameron Ritchie</td>
<td>General Electric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Schafer</td>
<td>Analogic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elan Scheinman</td>
<td>Reveal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brandon Sorrell</td>
<td>Reveal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frank Vorwald</td>
<td>Analogic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Webber</td>
<td>General Electric</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Technical Team was supported by a project team led by Jacobs Consultancy Inc. and the Northrop Grumman Corporation.
In addition, to prepare the document for distribution to the industry, the following individuals participated in a series of technical review workshops and contributed valuable insights to the refinement of this document:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jeff Callaghan</td>
<td>Vic Thompson Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amy Becke</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khalid Haider</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve McQueen</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian Nadreau</td>
<td>Jacobs Consultancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amir Neeman</td>
<td>Jacobs Consultancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Reed</td>
<td>TSA Office of Security Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Smith</td>
<td>Battelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larry Studdiford</td>
<td>Cage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sam Swearingen</td>
<td>Carter Burgess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vic Thompson</td>
<td>Vic Thompson Company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1
INTRODUCTION

These planning guidelines and design standards for airport checked baggage inspection systems were prepared as part of the Baggage Screening Investment Study (BSIS) undertaken by the U.S. Transportation Security Administration (TSA) in consultation with the aviation industry during 2006 (referred to herein as the BSIS Guidelines). The design principles and methods presented in the BSIS Guidelines incorporate insights and experience of industry stakeholders, including TSA, airport and airline representatives, planners, architects, baggage handling system designers, and equipment manufacturers. The BSIS Guidelines are intended to assist planners and designers in developing cost-effective solutions and to convey TSA requirements for checked baggage inspection systems (CBISs).

In particular, the BSIS Guidelines provide specific guidance on ways to design baggage screening systems that (1) are less costly from both a capital and life-cycle perspective, and (2) have higher performance than the first generation of installed baggage screening systems. Lessons learned from previous installations are emphasized, as are the benefits and specifications of emerging new screening technologies.

1.1 BACKGROUND

The BSIS is a direct response to the requirements included in the Intelligence Reform and Terrorism Prevention Act of 2004 (Section 4019d), and is intended to respond to directives in the 2005 Department of Homeland Security (DHS) Appropriations Act Conference Report and recommendations contained in the March 15, 2005, Government Accountability Office (GAO) report. The Electronic Baggage Screening Program (EBSP) framework was developed as the basis for the BSIS. As described in the EBSP Strategic Planning Framework submitted to Congress in February 2006, the primary goals of the EBSP Strategic Plan are to:

1. Increase security through deploying explosives detection system (EDS) equipment to as many airports as practicable and implementing more labor-intensive explosives trace detection (ETD) screening protocols at those locations where ETD will continue to be used for primary screening.

2. Minimize EBSP life-cycle costs by deploying the best possible screening solutions at each airport, appropriately balancing capital investment and operating cost tradeoffs.

3. Minimize impacts to TSA and airport/airline operations through well-designed and well-placed EDS solutions.
4. Provide a flexible security infrastructure “platform” for accommodating growing airline traffic and other industry changes over the next 20 years and for addressing potential new threats.

To achieve these goals and fully implement the design philosophies embraced in the BSIS and the EBSP Strategic Planning Framework, the BSIS Guidelines were developed as an industry reference for airport operators, airlines, planners, and designers who will be instrumental in implementing improved checked baggage screening systems. The focus of the BSIS Guidelines is on in-line systems.

For the purpose of expediting the nationwide installation of checked baggage screening systems in an equitable, sustainable, and cost-effective manner, as required by legislation, the BSIS Guidelines:

- Establish common design principles and metrics that all screening system designs shall meet.
- Consolidate the collective industry experience and insights on the best practices for planning, designing, and implementing baggage screening systems.
- Disseminate the latest information on screening technologies, in-line screening concepts, and screening protocols.
- Standardize the methodology for planning, designing, and evaluating various system design alternatives.

Since the large-scale deployment of EDS screening systems in 2002 and 2003, the aviation industry has had the opportunity to learn from implementation and operation of the initial in-line EDS installations. TSA checked baggage screening procedures have evolved and improved screening technologies have been developed. On the basis of the experience from earlier EDS installations, newly planned CBISs have also begun to incorporate features that enhance the durability of the baggage handling system (BHS) and maximize the performance of EDS equipment and the overall screening system.

However, outstanding issues do exist that are addressed in this document:

- Implementation of best practices during development of a screening system remains uneven, and the knowledge gained often stays (and differs) within a select group of airports, airlines, and CBIS designers.
- The focus of in-line EDS concept development remains largely fixed on the substantial upfront capital investment and not on the sustainability of the system for all stakeholders (e.g., recurring costs to airlines and TSA).
• Most in-line EDS concepts continue to focus on capital-intensive, centralized system designs and assume that each screening zone should have the same basic type of in-line system. The development of new EDS machines that differ in size and throughput (e.g., CT-80 and other technologies that could be certified in the near future) as well as add-on technologies (e.g., ViewLink) have presented new options for in-line EDS screening systems. Innovative concepts, such as mini in-line EDS screening systems, have also been developed. A wide range of current in-line EDS screening systems have different tradeoffs among upfront capital costs, staffing efficiency, and spatial requirements. It is increasingly recognized that a “one size fits all” solution for every airport and terminal does not exist.

1.2 PREVIOUS VERSIONS OF PLANNING AND DESIGN GUIDELINES

The Aviation and Transportation Security Act (ATSA) required 100% electronic screening of checked baggage by December 31, 2002 (subsequently, this deadline was extended to December 31, 2003). As a result, a first set of planning and design guidelines for the installation of stand-alone EDS and ETD equipment was published in 2002. These guidelines did not, however, provide guidance on the development of in-line EDS.

To provide information on the lessons learned through the installation of CBISs at several airports since 2002, the Aviation Security Advisory Committee (ASAC) commissioned a working group to develop near-term checked baggage screening system planning and design guidelines, herein referred to as the Recommended Security Guidelines for Airport Planning, Design and Construction (the ASDG-WG Guidelines). These guidelines were published in June 2006 and contain information on best practices for CBIS design; however, they provide guidance only on technology certified as of the published date.

1.3 PURPOSE

While the ASDG-WG Guidelines primarily focus on currently certified technology, the BSIS Guidelines follow the goals of the EBSP Strategic Planning Framework to expedite the cost-effective deployment of CBISs. To achieve these goals, the deployment of next-generation technology that has recently been certified, or is expected to be certified within the next 2 to 3 years, must be accelerated. Accordingly, the BSIS Guidelines emphasize new technology and associated performance assumptions, screening protocols, and concepts of operation. In addition, the BSIS Guidelines provide guidance regarding the economic analysis needed to support the selection of the most cost-effective system. The BSIS Guidelines also provide a new planning and design process, which is focused around life cycle cost estimates and a participatory approach involving all relevant stakeholders at an early stage.
1.4 SCOPe
The Guidelines are focused on the planning and design of CBIS which would generally comprise the following four screening processes:

- Level 1—Primary screening using Explosive Detection Systems (EDS).
- Level 2—Resolution of alarmed bags from Level 1 using on-screen resolution (OSR) techniques. Monitoring stations can be located at the EDS machine for local resolution or at remote locations with multiplexing capabilities.
- Level 3—Resolution of alarmed bags from Level 2 using Explosive Trace Detection (ETD) machines in the checked baggage resolution area (CBRA).
- Level 4—Ordinance disposal (e.g., loaded into a Threat Containment Unit).

The Guidelines also deal with some aspects of the installation, testing and commissioning of CBIS; however, issues related to the operation and maintenance of CBISs are not within the scope of the Guidelines. In addition, sources of funding and eligibility for use of specific financing mechanisms will be addressed in a separate document.

1.5 ORGANIZATION
The subsequent chapters of these BSIS Guidelines are as follows:

- Chapter 2, Guidelines Context and Primary Objectives—Overview of the context for developing the BSIS Guidelines, as well as primary objectives.
- Chapter 3, Planning and Design Process—Design package content, descriptions of the various phases of the design process and Guidelines applicability throughout the design process.
- Chapter 4, Design Standards—Design requirements to ensure conformance with TSA security and operational performance standards.
- Chapter 5, System Types and Screening Equipment—Detailed descriptions of screening equipment and screening system concepts.
- Chapter 6, Baggage Screening Demand—Methodology and elements of demand forecasting.
- Chapter 7, Baggage Screening Equipment Requirements—Methodology for initially sizing screening systems.
- Chapter 8, Contingencies—Summary of the process of developing a contingency plan, principles of contingency design, and evaluation of contingency alternatives.
Chapter 9, Development and Evaluation of Alternatives—Development of alternatives, including matching facility type to security equipment and baggage screening system design, assessing costs, establishing the economic value of alternatives, and determining the most cost-effective alternatives.

This document also contains the following appendices:

- Appendix A—Introduction to In-Line Baggage Inspection Systems, which provides an overview of how screening of checked baggage is performed in a typical in-line CBIS.

- Appendix B—Generic Examples of Checked Baggage Inspection Systems, which provides generic examples of baggage screening systems, operational assumptions, and best practices.

- Appendix C—Pre-Design Phase Case Study for Oakland International Airport, which demonstrates how the BSIS Guidelines should be followed to develop and select viable CBIS alternatives during the Pre-Design phase.

- Appendix D—Checked Baggage Inspection System Requirements, which consists of two parts:
  
  D1 – Design Performance Requirements, which provides requirements that all CBIS designs must meet.

  D2 – Commissioning and Evaluation Requirements, which provides guidelines for developing a Site Specific Test Plan (SSTP) used to test and commission the CBIS after installation.

- Appendix E—Example Contingency Plan for Oakland International Airport, which demonstrates how a contingency plan related to CBIS operation should be developed.

1.6 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS AND MODELS

The BSIS Guidelines were developed with reference to several documents and models previously developed by TSA and its contractors, as discussed below:

1.6.1 Recommended Security Guidelines for Airport Planning, Design and Construction, Revised July 2006

This revised document was issued by TSA in July 2006 and presents recommendations for incorporating sound security considerations into the planning, design, construction, and modification of security-related airport facilities and airport terminal buildings. It consolidates information developed through the participation of TSA and other government and aviation industry professionals. The Recommended Security Guidelines document is intended to help users ensure that security considerations and requirements are a component of the planning and
design of airport infrastructure, facilities and operational elements. Intended users include aviation user-agencies (airport operators, aircraft operators and airport tenants), airport planners and consultants, designers, architects, and engineers engaged in renovation and new airport facility planning, design or construction projects.

1.6.2 Integrated Deployment Model

As part of the BSIS, TSA also developed the Integrated Deployment Model, which is an economic model based on a life-cycle cost approach to screening system selection. The model is used to conduct a top-down evaluation of various schematic concepts of EDS screening systems, based on the methodologies outlined in this document, at airports designated as Threat Category X, I, II, and III. These schematic concepts take into account high-level spatial constraints at airport terminals and are optimally sized according to the estimated checked baggage demand. The concepts were then evaluated on the basis of the life-cycle costs of developing, maintaining, and replacing the EDS screening systems. Though schematic in nature, these concepts may serve as a useful starting point for any airport or airline that plans to implement a checked baggage screening system and would be made available upon request.

The Integrated Deployment Model is a working model that will be continuously updated as new technologies are developed and performance characteristics are updated.

1.7 NEXT STEPS

Given the scope of the BSIS Guidelines as well as the tight schedule under which the BSIS Guidelines were developed, several issues are intended to be addressed in revised versions of the BSIS Guidelines and/or in separate documents, including the following:

1.7.1 Design Issues

- Develop further detail on the design, implementation, operation, and maintenance of CBISs with the involvement of EDS manufacturers and system integrators, especially with reference to CBIS design using next generation EDS technology.

- Develop template versions or outlines for the reports required as submittals during the planning and design process, as defined in Chapter 3.

- Develop recommendations for defining requirements in baggage handling system integration contracts.

1.7.2 Implementation Issues

- Develop standards for lower information technology (IT) levels (such as controls) and higher IT levels, which will lead to system operational commonality, ease of maintenance, and proper interfaces with screening
equipment, and will further lower the cost of the overall implementation and ongoing support. TSA is currently developing standards related to data networks and communication between EDS equipment and BHS equipment.

- Develop standards for programmable logic controller (PLC) coding and integration to reduce integration difficulties and associated costs of debugging customized PLC logic.

1.7.3 Post-Implementation Issues

- Identify best practices and lessons learned that pertain to CBIS operation and maintenance, and expand the BSIS Guidelines to include a CBIS operation and maintenance chapter.

- Develop recommendations and program for periodic testing of CBISs to ensure that systems maintain compliance with initially tested standards as outlined in each system's Site Specific Test Plan (SSTP).

- Define a nationwide process and standards for configuration management of CBIS equipment, programmable logic controller (PLC) code, and CBIS specifications.

- Define interaction between TSA, airports, and airlines regarding modification to BHS configuration (e.g., notification procedures, allowable changes without TSA approval, access to PLC code).

1.7.4 Funding Issues

- Incorporate guidance regarding TSA business rules for funding alternatives and cost eligibility.
Chapter 2
GUIDELINES CONTEXT AND PRIMARY OBJECTIVES

The state-of-the-art for CBIS design has been evolving rapidly over the last several years as BHS technology and design, EDS technology, and screening protocols have progressed, and lessons have been learned from early CBIS installations.

When life-cycle costs and benefits of the first generation in-line systems are considered, many of the currently installed systems have not produced sufficient economic savings to offset their initial capital costs (i.e., they are typically not delivering a positive return on investment). Although some of the most recent designs are producing significant staff savings, many of the earliest designs produced much lower staff savings, which have not been sufficient to offset the upfront capital costs. In addition, the facilities and BHS modification costs have been higher than expected.

This suboptimal outcome is not altogether surprising given the first-generation nature of the screening system designs and the limitations imposed by available EDS technology. Another contributing factor is that many of the airports where the first in-line systems were installed were among the most difficult to develop solutions for 100% electronic screening given space, operational, and/or other constraints. In-line solutions, in some cases, were the only feasible solution given the major operational impacts or unacceptably low level of security associated with other alternatives.

Today, many different philosophies have emerged regarding design best practices, and cost and performance vary widely across these philosophies. Many designs have recently been submitted to TSA that could be both less costly and perform better from operating and security perspectives. In general, significant opportunity exists nationwide to simultaneously reduce costs and improve operating performance. The BSIS Guidelines have been developed to properly consolidate these philosophies and recommend standards to which all new CBIS designs should be held.

2.1 NEED FOR BSIS GUIDELINES

With increasing pressure to automate baggage-screening functions because of high operating costs (and sometimes passenger inconvenience), and with the potential for additional funding being made available as a result of the BSIS, guidelines that consolidate and promulgate best practices are urgently needed. In addition to identifying a funding solution, the BSIS focused on opportunities to significantly reduce costs through improved designs and new technology. Without explicit and detailed guidelines—and strong program management oversight—significant risk exists that nationwide program costs would be significantly higher than estimated and the resulting checked baggage screening systems would perform below expectation.
Accordingly, the BSIS Guidelines were prepared to help facilitate a closer match between the underlying principles and assumptions developed in the BSIS and the systems that are actually implemented.

2.2 EMPHASIS AND OBJECTIVES OF GUIDELINES

These BSIS Guidelines not only emphasize best practices associated with screening system layouts, they also address other factors necessary to actively manage system costs and performance. The key objectives emphasized include:

- Achieving **lowest-cost solutions** by leveraging **new technology** and analyzing life-cycle costs of alternatives.
- Defining **operational performance standards** that must be met during implementation, as well as during planning and design.
- Understanding the complexity of in-line screening systems and how to **avoid the common pitfalls** of first-generation designs.
- Developing principles for **appropriate sizing of systems**, including methods for estimating demand and equipment requirements.
- Developing principles for providing **equipment redundancy** and establishing **contingency operations**.
- Developing principles for **accommodating growth** beyond initial system sizing.
- Providing **flexibility** to baggage handling system designs and facilities.
- Using an **integrated and participatory approach to the planning and design process**, as well as the implementation process, by involving all relevant stakeholders.
- Upgrading the **design review and approval process**.

2.2.1 Lowest-Cost Solutions

Achieving the lowest-cost solution requires three key changes from typical past practices: (1) assuming implementation of soon-to-certified screening technologies during the development of alternatives, (2) considering a wide range of alternatives and avoiding prematurely narrowing the alternatives as the result of a preconceived notion regarding which system would be best, and (3) assessing the 20-year life-cycle costs of different alternatives, so that the ongoing costs of operating and maintaining these systems are appropriately balanced with the upfront capital costs.
2.2.2 Operational Performance Standards
In the past, operational performance standards (e.g., bag time in system and error rates) have been enforced primarily on the “back end” of the design process at the system testing stage. These BSIS Guidelines will establish new standards that will (1) clarify the operational parameters that must be met and (2) require evidence of ability to meet these parameters during the planning and design processes. These standards will reduce the risk of costly mistakes.

2.2.3 Avoiding Common Pitfalls
Baggage screening systems are very complex, especially the more automated systems. Many different technologies for conveyance, tracking, and screening must all work together seamlessly to achieve an efficient and reliable system. Many lessons have been learned, but the distribution and understanding of these lessons are quite uneven. A summary of these lessons learned is provided in Chapter 4.

2.2.4 Appropriate Initial System Sizing
The approach used for estimating demand and equipment needs for the initial system has a major impact on project costs. Many different approaches have been used over the last several years, with widely varying results. An overly conservative approach to estimating demand and equipment needs can result in prematurely eliminating potentially less costly screening alternatives. Underestimating demand and equipment needs can result in excessive occurrences of demand exceeding capacity and associated operational difficulties and security degradation. The Guidelines provide a recommended approach for estimating demand and equipment needs, and clarify the design year for various components of the system (e.g., for screening equipment sizing, the design year is 5 years beyond the date of beneficial use (DBU)). Chapter 6 presents the recommended approach to baggage system demand analysis and Chapter 7 presents the recommended approach to determining baggage screening equipment requirements.

For the purposes of deriving screening equipment requirements, the methodology set forth in the Guidelines instructs planners to use the average day of the peak month (ADPM) as the design day. The system should be designed to accommodate the peak 10-minute bag flow of the design day in the design year. The ADPM is to be used as the design day to ensure that systems are designed to meet average conditions in the peak month, with the understanding that contingency plans will be implemented as discussed in Chapter 8. When designing for the ADPM does not provide sufficient capacity given the agreed-upon contingency plans, alternative design days can be used with the approval of the local design committee and TSA.

2.2.5 Equipment Redundancy and Contingency Operations
Other important considerations for system sizing are equipment redundancy and contingency operations. The best approach for providing for redundancy and contingency operations will vary significantly depending on the local conditions. In general, low cost opportunities should be sought to “share” capacity across
screening zones before capacity is added to a specific zone. Regardless of the redundancies built into a particular system, these Guidelines specify the creation of a contingency plan agreed upon by key stakeholders, including airport and airline personnel, which defines how the system will operate when screening equipment is unavailable, demand exceeds capacity, and/or there is a catastrophic system failure. More details are provided in Chapter 8.

### 2.2.6 Accommodating Growth

Many of the initial baggage screening systems were designed to accommodate only 5 years of growth without any explicit consideration as to the best ways to accommodate demand beyond that point. In some cases, marginal additional upfront investments in conveyors or facilities could significantly reduce costs over the long term. For example, significant savings and less operational disruption could be achieved by providing needed expansion space upfront rather than incrementally expanding a facility over time. Also, some savings may be achieved by providing for additional queuing during initial construction to take advantage of future high-volume EDS machines.

The choice of how additional capacity is provided will depend on the constraints of the facility, forecast growth, degree of confidence about the forecast growth, the overall capacity of the terminal, the expected life of the terminal, and the initial system type. Going forward, DBU plus 5 years will continue to be used as the design year for initial system sizing; however, the level of upfront investment to accommodate demand beyond DBU plus 5 years should be assessed using a 20-year life-cycle cost analysis. Chapter 7 provides more details.

### 2.2.7 Flexibility

Screening system designs to date have generally been designed with existing, certified technology in mind. However, building in flexibility from the outset to seamlessly accommodate future upgraded security technologies will keep future upgrade costs to a minimum while maximizing both current and future EDS performance. Given the rapidly changing nature of screening technologies and the threats facing the aviation system, flexible system design is crucial for the successful implementation of a screening system.

### 2.2.8 Stakeholder Involvement

An government-industry working group is planned to be used as a mechanism for continuing collaborative industry-TSA communication at the program-wide level and to relieve some pressure on TSA being the sole administrator of cost control.

Specifically, the government-industry working group should have the following roles:

1. Serve as a regular forum for exchanging lessons learned as implementation moves forward and advising on regular refinement of the BSIS Guidelines.
2. Assist TSA with technical review of designs.

3. Assist TSA with reviewing the impact of potential screening protocol changes (such as reviewing the cost implications of Canadian and international recheck screening).

4. Assist TSA with improving communications with the aviation industry, including communicating design best practices.

5. Assist TSA with overall EBSP management, including periodic updates to the Strategic Plan as warranted by technology or other critical changes.

6. Serve as a stakeholder forum for TSA to brainstorm operation and policy issues as needed.

If possible, the working group should include ongoing representation from airports and airlines to work directly with TSA program management staff at TSA headquarters, as well as representation from industry trade associations.

In addition, Integrated Local Design Teams (ILDT) at the airport level, should be established to ensure that all necessary local physical, financial, and operational conditions are considered. ILDTs should include the following representation: airport, airline, local TSA, local law enforcement, relevant EDS vendor(s), a TSA headquarters representative of the working group, and an industry representative of the working group. If PFC funding is contemplated, regular communication with the local FAA Airports office servicing the airport should be included in the ILDT process.

### 2.2.9 Design Review and Approval Process

A significant upgrade to the design review and approval process is needed to support the objectives of cost management and increased quality for the screening systems. These Guidelines present three key changes associated with the design review and approval process:

1. The incorporation of a Pre-Design Phase is discussed to provide more rigorous analysis of preliminary conceptual alternatives and to document the rationale for eliminating various alternative designs.

2. In the design packages that must be submitted, increased emphasis is placed on economic analysis, contingency operations plans, and conformance with operational performance standards.

3. The process of design review and approval, including the number, type, and timing of design packages that must be submitted to TSA, has been modified to provide for increased stakeholder involvement through the use of ILDTs (see Section 2.2.8 for further details).
To ensure an effective process for submittal, review, and approval of screening system design by TSA, three major phases are identified for the overall design process:

- **Pre-Design Phase.** During this phase, a recommended conceptual alternative would be developed, which involves identifying existing baseline conditions, estimating the design-year baggage screening demand, and selecting a preferred alternative through an iterative process of developing and analyzing a range of candidate alternatives.

- **Schematic Design Phase.** During this phase, the work product of the Pre-Design Phase would be used to further develop and refine the preferred alternative(s), including initial development of design drawings, more detailed rough-order-of-magnitude construction cost estimates, and program schedule, resulting in an approved Basis of Design Report.

- **Detailed Design Phase.** During this phase, the Basis of Design Report would be used to refine and finalize detailed design drawings, rough order-of-magnitude construction cost estimates, and program schedule. Three sub-phases are assumed as milestones: 30%, 70%, and 100% design.

Figure 2-1 on the following page summarizes the assumed design phases and the applicable chapters of the BSIS Guidelines.
Figure 2-1
SUMMARY OF THE DESIGN PROCESS PHASES

- Pre-Design
  - Demand Estimation (Chapter 6)
  - System Types (Chapter 5)
  - Zoning Schema (Chapter 6)

- Schematic Design
  - Analysis/Design
    - Concept Definition
    - High-Level Flow-Based Modeling (Chapter 6 and Appendix C)
    - Refinement Conceptual Definition of Preferred Alternative(s)
  - Detailed Program Requirements (Chapters 4, 6 and Appendix D1)
  - Technical Contingency Development (Chapter 8)
  - Phasing and Constructability Technical Memoranda
  - Probable ROM Cost Estimates
  - Design Committee Review and Approval
  - Specific Project Schedule
  - Probable Design Package

- Detailed Design
  - Drawings and Plans
  - Drawings
  - Contingency Development
  - Construction Cost Estimates
  - Operational Standards Evaluation

- Planning and Design Process (Chapter 3)
  - Basis of Design Report
  - Project Manual
  - Operational and O&M
  - Equipment Installation Guidelines
  - Screening Equipment Installation Guidelines

- Design Standards (Chapter 4)
  - Operational Standards
  - Reporting
  - Operational Standards

- Planning and Design Process (Chapter 3)
  - Schematic Design
  - Detailed Design
  - Pre-Design

- Planning Guidelines and Design Standards for Checked Baggage Inspection Systems
Version 1.0, October 10, 2007
TSA506
Chapter 3

PLANNING AND DESIGN PROCESS

The objective of a CBIS project is to identify, design, and implement appropriately sized, functional, and cost-effective screening systems for each airport. The benefits of an effective design and review process include minimization of project costs, schedule delays, and adverse impacts to airline and airport operations, and maximization of system functionality and overall security. The process for submittal, review, and approval by TSA for each CBIS is described in this chapter.

It is assumed that the project sponsor will establish a preliminary program for the design and implementation of the optimal screening system and that this program will be submitted to TSA in compliance with the Pre-Design submittal milestones described below. TSA approval of these milestones shall trigger initiation of the Schematic Design phase. Once the Basis of Design Report has been submitted and approved at the end of the Schematic Design phase, the project sponsor will be in a position to procure full design services for the CBIS.

3.1 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

The responsibilities of individual ILDT members must be fully understood and properly integrated for the effective design and implementation of the optimal screening system.

3.1.1 Project Stakeholders

Project stakeholders should be periodically briefed on the progress of the planning and design effort. A subset of the stakeholder group would participate on the ILDT, as described in subsequent sections. The stakeholder list should be customized to reflect the relevant stakeholders at specific airports and is anticipated to include the following primary functions:

- Airport: Engineering, Operations, IT, Maintenance, Planning and Design, Project Management, and others as appropriate.

- Airline(s): Headquarters, Operations, Corporate Real Estate, IT, Maintenance, Engineering, Planning, Security Technology Officer(s), Station Manager(s), and others as appropriate.

- TSA: Federal Security Director, local stakeholder manager, and/or other project representative designated by the Federal Security Director, TSA Headquarters technical review.

It is anticipated that the following additional project stakeholders (or designees) will be included in some phases of the process (as required):
• Local law enforcement (responsible for procedures to handle suspect bags not cleared at level 3 screening in the CBRA by ETD).

• Government-industry working group to update the ILDTs on recent information pertaining to the CBIS being designed and assist the ILDT with the design process, as needed.

3.1.2 Project Sponsor

The project sponsor is assumed to be an airport operator or an airline (if the system is for an airline-owned terminal). Key responsibilities of the project sponsor include:

• Initiation and execution of the planning and design of the CBIS.

• Formation of the ILDT and selection of a professional planning and design team.

• Application for TSA or other funding.

• Initiation and execution of the construction, as well as the testing and commissioning of the CBIS.

• Operations and maintenance of the BHS portion of the CBIS.

3.1.3 Integrated Local Design Team

As part of the design process, an ILDT that includes representatives of some or all of the above-mentioned stakeholders shall be formed. In addition, the ILDT will include a professional planning and design team comprised of architects, engineers, planners, CBIS designers, cost estimators, and project managers. The design team is also likely to include specialty consultants such as simulation analysts and landscape architects on an as-needed basis.

The ILDT will be responsible for the development of alternative screening concepts, evaluation of those concepts, and generation of design drawings/submittals. In addition, the ILDT will assess the specific local conditions affecting the CBIS design as well as the standards to be met by the design. After proper evaluation of local conditions and the CBIS design, the ILDT can, via the project sponsor, petition TSA for an exemption from the standards or design principles set forth in these BSIS Guidelines if the ILDT concludes that these standards cannot be met by the CBIS designs due to local constraints. The ILDT should assess all implications of such an exemption and include full documentation supporting the request.

3.1.4 TSA Headquarters

Representatives from TSA headquarters will be responsible for review and approval/rejection of design submittals. In addition, TSA would be responsible for determining funding eligibility and prioritization.
3.1.5 Government-Industry Working Group

The government-industry working group will assist TSA headquarters in the design review and approval process as requested by TSA. In addition, the working group will serve as a central clearinghouse for design best practices and advise the ILDT periodically of best practices and any relevant changes in TSA policy that may affect system designs.

3.1.6 Summary

Figure 3-1 below summarizes the interactions between the project sponsor, ILDT, TSA headquarters, and the government-industry working group:

![Figure 3-1](image)

**SUMMARY OF RESPONSIBILITIES DURING THE DESIGN PROCESS**

- **Project Sponsor**
  - Request approval for deviation from BSIS Guidelines
  - Submit design documents
  - Jointly develop design documents

- **TSA Headquarters**
  - Approval/rejection of deviation from BSIS Guidelines
  - Approval/rejection of design documents
  - As needed assistance with review of design documents

- **ILDT**
  - Industry best practices

- **Government-Industry Working Group**
  - Industry best practices

3.2 PROJECT PHASES

The assumed project phases are listed below in sequence:

- Pre-Design
- Schematic Design
- Detailed Design
• Construction, Testing, and Commissioning

Each phase is described in detail below.

3.2.1 Pre-Design

The primary purpose of this phase is to identify a recommended conceptual alternative for submittal to TSA before the initiation of schematic design. This phase requires the identification of existing baseline conditions, estimation of design year baggage screening demand, and development, analysis, and evaluation of alternative screening concepts. This phase consists of an iterative process for selecting a preferred alternative from a range of candidate alternatives. In each iterative cycle, alternatives are further refined and evaluated.

The end product of this phase will be a Preferred Alternatives Analysis Report to be submitted to TSA describing the preferred alternative and the process and rationale used in its selection. The report should provide sufficient documentation to satisfy TSA that a reasonably diverse range of alternatives was explored and that the preferred alternative represents the most cost-effective solution.

The tasks involved in the Pre-Design phase are outlined below:

1. Conduct data collection and facilities inventory.

2. Define the zoning scheme, select system types, and estimate the design year baggage screening demand (see Chapter 6 for detailed description on estimating baggage screening demand).


4. Develop preliminary screening alternatives as described in Chapter 6 and 7. These screening alternatives should be similar to the various system types described in Chapter 5.

5. Analyze the preliminary alternatives by conducting qualitative and high-level quantitative evaluations (e.g., spatial analyses, assessment of compatibility with airline business models) including security screening equipment requirements. See Chapter 7 for more details on high-level quantitative assessment of equipment requirements. See Appendix E for an example of how a qualitative and high-level quantitative assessment of screening alternatives could be done.

6. Select the most promising alternatives for further development and evaluation. See Appendix E for an example of selecting the most promising screening alternatives.

7. Submit Preliminary Alternatives Analysis Report to TSA (see below).
8. Refine the level of definition needed for the selected alternatives to support more detailed evaluations (e.g. specific screening equipment type as well as screening equipment requirements).

9. Perform Rough Order of Magnitude (ROM) evaluations; including 20-year life-cycle cost analyses (see Chapter 9).

10. Select the preferred alternative, i.e., the alternative with the lowest present value life-cycle costs; in addition, other promising alternatives could be carried forward to the Schematic Design phase at the discretion of the project sponsor. See Chapter 9 as well as Appendix E on process of selection of lowest present value life-cycle cost alternative.

11. Submit Preferred Alternatives Analysis Report to TSA (see below).

The significant project submittals to be made by the project sponsor during this phase are listed below in chronological order:

- **Preliminary Alternatives Analysis Report.** This report should document the assumptions and methodology used to derive the design year baggage screening demand, the process used to develop alternatives, a description of all alternatives considered, and a list of the preliminary set of alternatives to be carried forward for analysis on a life-cycle cost basis. This report will be used as the basis for requesting staffing estimates from TSA for use in the life-cycle cost analysis, as described in Chapter 9. See Chapter 5 for a list of various screening system types. See Chapter 6 for a detailed description of how to develop screening alternatives and Chapter 7 for determining screening equipment requirements for the various screening alternatives.

- **Preferred Alternatives Analysis Report.** This report should document the life-cycle cost analysis and basis for selection of the preferred alternative(s) to be further developed in the Schematic Design phase as described in Chapter 5, 6, 7 and 9—collectively, these chapters provide an explanation of how to select a preferred alternative from a universe of screening alternatives.

As part of the review process during the Pre-Design Phase, TSA headquarters is expected to provide the project sponsor with the following:

- Estimates of staffing levels necessary to complete the life-cycle cost analysis in preparation of the Preferred Alternatives Analysis Report.

- Formal approval/rejection and comments on the report submittals.

### 3.2.2 Schematic Design

This phase should build upon the work product of the Pre-Design phase to further develop and refine the preferred alternative(s), including the initial development of
design drawings. In addition, a more detailed rough order-of-magnitude construction cost estimate should be developed and incorporated into the life-cycle cost analysis performed in the Pre-Design phase. A program schedule should also be developed in this phase.

The major deliverable for this phase will be a Basis of Design Report, which will add the following detail to Pre-Design work products:

- **Detailed Program Requirements**, including planning and modeling assumptions and results, a conceptual description of system operations, and a system evaluation of the preferred alternative (see Chapter 6 for further information on the selection of the preferred alternative). Planners shall make specific reference to TSA-specified CBIS design performance requirements and current commissioning requirements outlined in Chapter 4 and Appendix D1 and D2. Planners shall also make specific reference to the equipment that has been identified to perform the screening function as well as the requirements of multiplexing, if applicable.

- High-level flow-based modeling assumptions and results.

- **Preliminary Concept Plans** for the existing BHS as well as the planned configuration of the in-line CBIS.

- **Phasing and Constructibility Technical Memoranda** documenting project specific issues for each discipline, including CBIS design, architectural, structural, mechanical, plumbing, electrical, and communications.

- **ROM Estimate of Probable Construction Cost and O&M Costs** based on the Basis of Design Report documentation.

- Documentation of Stakeholder Review and Approval.

- Preliminary Project Schedule.

It is assumed that the airport sponsor will engage the services of a professional design team to complete the deliverables for the Schematic Design phase. The approved Basis of Design Report shall be an attachment to the full contract for design.

As part of the review process at the end of the Schematic Design Phase, TSA headquarters is expected to provide the project sponsor with the following:

- Preliminary indication of expected equipment type to be delivered.

- Formal approval/rejection and comments on the Basis of Design Report.

A meeting shall be held with the ILDT and TSA at the end of the Schematic Design phase to review the Basis of Design Report.
3.2.3 Detailed Design

Based on the TSA-approved Basis of Design Report, detailed design drawings shall be refined and finalized as part of the Detailed Design phase. In addition, ROM construction and O&M cost estimates shall be further refined and finalized. The preliminary project schedule developed in the Schematic Design phase shall be updated for each submittal required in this phase.

Deliverables for the Detailed Design phase shall be submitted based on percent completion of the detailed design. These milestones are described below.

3.2.3.1 30% Design Sub-Phase

The 30% Design package shall include the following documents:

- Updated Basis of Design Report.

- **Operational Standards Assessment** based on simulation analysis provided as an AVI format for visual output and comma-delimited text file or excel spread sheet with simulation statistical inputs and outputs.

- **Preliminary Plans** for all disciplines, including demolition and phased (as applicable) construction plans.

- **Cross Sections** showing the vertical dimensions of the CBIS.

- **Outline Specifications**, including reference to the TSA-furnished screening equipment to be used in the CBIS.

- **Screening Equipment Installation Guidelines**, documenting the satisfactory accommodation of the selected screening equipment in compliance with the manufacturer’s site-installation guide.

- **Outline of Reporting Capabilities** to be provided by the CBIS.

- Documentation of Stakeholder Review and Approval.

- **30% Estimate of Probable Construction and O&M Costs**.

- As part of the review process at the end of the 30% Design Sub-Phase, TSA headquarters is expected to provide the project sponsor with the following:
  - Updated indication of expected equipment type to be delivered.
  - Formal approval/rejection and comments on the 30% design submittals.

A meeting shall be held with the project team and TSA at the end of this milestone to review the above-mentioned documentation.
3.2.3.2 **70% Design Sub-Phase**

The 70% Design package shall include the following documents:

- Updated Basis of Design Report.

- **Updated Operational Standards Assessment** based on simulation analysis provided as an AVI format for visual output and comma-delimited text file or excel spreadsheet with simulation statistical inputs and outputs.

- **70% Design Drawings** for all disciplines, including demolition and phased (as applicable) construction plans.

- **Cross Sections** showing the vertical dimensions of the CBIS.

- **Preliminary Contingency Plan** describing contingency operations in the event of:
  - Screening equipment failure
  - Conveyance equipment failure
  - Loss of utility power
  - Unplanned surges in system demand

- **70% Specifications**, with specific reference made to the responsibility of the BHS contractor to meet TSA-specified CBIS design performance requirements and current CBIS commissioning requirements for final TSA approval as well as documentation on the reporting capabilities designed for the CBIS. Refer to Chapter 4 for design standards, Appendix D1 for detailed information on design performance requirements, and Appendix D2 for commissioning requirements.

- **Draft Site-Specific Configuration Management Plan**, including documentation of the boundaries of the screening system, areas of responsibility between TSA, the airport, and the airlines, and procedures for documenting and informing relevant parties of modifications to the CBIS after system commissioning.

- Documentation of Stakeholder Review and Approval.

- **70% Estimate of Probable Construction and O&M Costs**.

As part of the review process at the end of the 70% Design Sub-Phase, TSA headquarters is expected to provide the project sponsor with the following:

- Updated indication of expected equipment type to be delivered.

- Formal approval/rejection and comments on the 70% design submittals.
A meeting shall be held with the project team and TSA at the end of this milestone to review the above-mentioned documentation.

### 3.2.3.3 100% Design Sub-Phase

The 100% Design package shall include the following documents:

- **Final Plans**, cross sections, details, and specifications for all disciplines, including demolition and phased (as applicable) construction plans.

- **Contingency Plans**, including diagrammatic depictions of baggage screening contingencies as well as other screening methods and mitigation measures. A consolidated document should be provided to describe the conditions that would trigger mitigation measures and protocols for operation. In addition, a directory of all project stakeholders with direct responsibilities for operation of the CBIS should be included in the document.

- **Project Specifications**, with specific reference made to the responsibility of the BHS contractor to meet TSA-specified CBIS design performance requirements and current commissioning requirements for final TSA approval, and including functional specifications of the system.

- **Final Site-Specific Configuration Management Plan**, including any updates on documentation of the boundaries of the screening system, areas of responsibility between TSA, the airport, and the airlines, and procedures for documenting and informing relevant parties of modifications to the CBIS after system commissioning.

- Documentation of Stakeholder Review and Approval.

- **Final Estimate of Probable Construction and O&M Cost**.

As part of the review process at the end of the 100% Design Sub-Phase, TSA headquarters is expected to provide the project sponsor with the following:

- Confirmation of exact equipment to be delivered and expected delivery schedule.

- Formal approval/rejection and comments on the 100% design submittals.

A meeting shall be held with the project team and TSA at the end of this milestone to review the above-mentioned documentation.

### 3.2.4 Construction Phase

The duration of this phase will vary significantly based on the complexity and size of the approved CBIS. However, the following requirements shall be followed during the construction phase:
• Any changes or amendments to the approved 100% design must be submitted and approved by the TSA.

• Construction schedules must allow sufficient time for thorough testing and inspection (see 3.2.5) and must be scheduled at minimum 30 calendar days in advance. CBIS specifications shall be developed to conform to TSA criteria for CBIS commissioning and evaluation, as defined in Appendix D2.

The project sponsor shall communicate the construction schedule and solicit the participation of designated TSA representatives at appropriate intervals during system construction. TSA must be regularly informed of the project schedule to confirm the availability of equipment, inform the project team of the availability of updated equipment schedule the delivery of dedicated equipment, schedule the system integration services of the screening equipment manufacturers, and schedule contractor services to conduct site acceptance test (SAT) procedures and to validate integrated site acceptance test (ISAT) procedures.

3.2.5 Testing and Commissioning

Prior to the CBIS being accepted and utilized for security screening operations, at a minimum the following must be completed:

• SAT conducted by TSA to ensure that EDS equipment meets performance standards.

• Pre-ISAT (for in-line CBIS only), which is a series of independent checks and confidence tests conducted by the project sponsor and witnessed and validated by TSA, aimed at independently evaluating CBIS performance and validating CBIS capability of meeting the design standards and performance requirements defined in Chapter 4 and Appendix D1. This test is conducted in accordance with Appendix D2. Written documentation of successful demonstration of Pre-ISAT shall be provided by project sponsor to TSA.

• ISAT (for in-line CBIS only) conducted by the project sponsor and witnessed, supervised and certified by TSA to ensure the CBIS meets design performance requirements in Appendix D1. This test is conducted for all in-line CBIS types in accordance with Appendix D2. Test bags will be provided by TSA.

If the CBIS fails the Pre-ISAT conducted by the project sponsor, subsequent testing shall occur at intervals no less than calendar 14 days. If the CBIS fails the ISAT conducted by the project sponsor, subsequent testing shall occur at intervals no less than calendar 30 days.
3.2.6 Project Closeout Phase

Once the CBIS has passed all necessary tests, the following actions shall be taken to close out the project:

- Official TSA approval of system for beneficial use
- As-built CBIS documentation submittal

3.3 SUMMARY

Figure 3-2 on the following page summarizes the various planning, design, construction, testing, commissioning, and closeout phases as well as key milestones and submittals within each phase.
### Figure 3-2

**SUMMARY OF PLANNING AND DESIGN PROCESS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Phase / Milestone</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre-Design Phase</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staffing Estimates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preliminary Alternative(s) Analysis Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred Alternative(s) Analysis Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Approval / Rejection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Schematic Design Phase</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basis of Design Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/LDT / TSA Meeting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Approval / Rejection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Preliminary Equipment Commitment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Detailed Design Phase</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30% Design Package</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/LDT / TSA Meeting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Approval / Rejection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Equipment Commitment (Updated)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70% Design Package</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/LDT / TSA Meeting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Approval / Rejection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Equipment Commitment (Updated)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100% Design Package</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/LDT / TSA Meeting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Approval / Rejection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA Equipment and Schedule Confirmation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Construction Phase</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes to approved 100% Design Package</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Schedule Updates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/LDT / TSA Meeting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening Equipment Delivery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Testing and Commissioning Phase</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre I/SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Project Commission Phase</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA DBU Approval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As-Built CERS Documentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key**
- Activity by Project Sponsor or Representative
- Activity by TSA or Representative
- Deliverable from Project Sponsor to TSA
- Deliverable from TSA to Project Sponsor
- Meeting with TSA
Chapter 4
DESIGN STANDARDS

A properly designed CBIS shall meet TSA’s security requirements as defined in this chapter and Appendix D1 while maximizing efficiency, passenger level-of-service, and cost-effectiveness. This chapter presents a discussion of:

- General design requirements related to security, efficiency, passenger level-of-service, and cost-effectiveness.
- Specific design requirements that will assist designers and planners in developing CBIS designs in accordance with the design standards.

The Design Performance Requirements (DPR) that the CBIS designs shall achieve are referenced in this chapter and described in detail in Appendix D1. The requirements shall be used by the CBIS designer in developing the CBIS plans and specifications.

4.1 GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

4.1.1 Security

When designing a CBIS the number one goal is security. The following paragraphs describe key security related goals to be met in planning and designing a new CBIS.

4.1.2 Efficiency

Efficient operation is a requirement of every CBIS design. To operate efficiently, CBIS designs must minimize the frequency of errors and faults. In particular, the frequency or rate at which non-alarmed bags are sent to the checked baggage resolution area (CBRA) due to tracking or misread errors must be minimized. Handling these errored bags with manual inspection at CBRA can increase operating costs for the system, as well as increase the time a bag is in the system.

In addition, an efficient CBIS design will have flexibility designed into it for future upgraded security technologies. Building in flexibility at the beginning will keep future upgrade costs to a minimum while maximizing both current and future EDS performance.

4.1.3 Passenger Level-Of-Service

CBISs must meet TSA security requirements without compromising the level of service that airlines provide to their passengers. The delay incurred by bags as a result of the screening process must be kept within acceptable limits to ensure that bags do not miss their intended flights and airline operations are not unduly affected. As described in Appendix D1, CBIS designs will be evaluated to assess compliance with the DPR for bag time in system.
4.1.4 Cost-Effectiveness

Alternative system types, if properly sized, will offer equivalent levels of security and performance in terms of passenger level-of-service. Selection of the preferred alternative will therefore be based on cost-effectiveness. When evaluating cost-effectiveness it is essential to consider not only the upfront capital costs involved, but also the recurring costs associated with operating, maintaining, and staffing the system. The methodology for evaluating cost-effectiveness is discussed in Chapter 9.

4.1.5 Concept of Operation

A CBIS is designed to accommodate a particular screening process, or concept of operation. When planning and designing a CBIS, the process should begin with a thorough understanding of the concept of operation. Planners and designers should document a concept of operation tailored to the specific CBIS as part of the design process.

4.1.6 Proper System Selection and Sizing

In planning a CBIS, proper system selection and sizing is essential to ensure that the system provides the required level of security. An undersized system that cannot handle the demand levels routinely imposed on it presents not only a security issue but can negatively impact passenger level-of-service. Separate chapters of these guidelines and requirements are devoted to the key steps involved in proper system selection and sizing. Chapter 5 describes the range of system types and screening equipment to be considered. Chapter 6 describes the process for estimating baggage screening demand. Chapter 7 describes the methodology for estimating baggage screening equipment requirements. Finally, chapter 9 describes the process used in the development and evaluation of alternatives.

4.2 SPECIFIC DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

Specific design requirements specify key operational objectives that CBISs must meet or exceed. This section introduces these requirements, which are defined in detail as part of Appendix D1.

CBISs will be evaluated during the design, construction, testing and commissioning phases to ensure compliance with specific design requirements:

- Design Phases – As described in Chapter 3 and Chapter 7, proposed in-line CBISs will be evaluated with high-level flow-based modeling during the schematic design phase and visual simulation modeling at the 30% and 70% detailed design phase. Modeling will allow designers to assess whether the proposed CBIS will meet the design performance requirements. Modeling will also assist designers by confirming preliminary equipment requirements and revealing potential weaknesses to be addressed as designs are refined. Before receiving approval from TSA, proposed in-line
CBIS designs will be evaluated to demonstrate compliance with the DPRs described in detail in Appendix D1.

- Construction, Testing, and Commissioning Phases – Before final TSA acceptance, a number of system and component tests will be performed on installed CBISs as part of the commissioning process. See Appendix D2 for a description of how the ISAT and Site Specific Test Plan (SSTP) will be developed.

4.2.1 BHS Capacity
The BHS of the proposed CBIS shall be optimized for both current and future EDS technology, and shall not constrain the maximum potential capacity of the EDS technology. Appendix D1 describes the BHS Capacity requirements.

4.2.2 Screening Throughput Capacity
Testing will be conducted to demonstrate that the actual screening throughput capacity of the installed CBIS meets or exceeds the designed screening throughput capacity. Appendix D1 describes the Screening Throughput Capacity requirements.

4.2.3 Bag Time in System
When designing the CBIS the amount of time a bag is in the system needs to be considered. The proposed CBIS shall not cause unacceptable levels of delay to bags processed during normal operations. Appendix D1 describes the Bag Time in System requirements.

4.2.4 OSR Decision Time
Sufficient decision time shall be provided for OSR screening before bags are diverted to a clear line for transport to bag make-up or an alarm line for transport to CBRA. Appendix D1 describes the OSR Decision Time requirements.

4.2.5 BHS Tracking ID
The use of BHS tracking IDs is required for positive bag tracking, and to reduce tracking error rates and thus the number of errored bags sent to CBRA.

4.2.5.1 Positive Bag Tracking
Positive bag tracking is a method whereby each bag is acquired by the BHS at a designated point, assigned a unique BHS tracking ID number, and its progress tracked by monitoring the conveyor belt speeds, distances, routing events, and other information associated with its travel path through the tracking zones. Positive tracking is essential to monitoring the threat status of each bag as it passes through the CBIS. Appendix D1 describes the Positive Bag Tracking requirements.
4.2.5.1.1  Use of Real-Time Belt Speeds

For a CBIS to be able to use real-time belt speeds the system must have installed belt tachometers, star wheels, or encoders. When a CBIS has been installed without these components, the CBIS is likely to suffer tracking losses and thus efficiency problems over time. Appendix D1 describes the Use of Real-Time Belt Speeds requirements.

4.2.5.1.2  Placement of Photoelectric Cells (PECs)

PECs are used to maintain track of baggage and to ensure that bags stop on the appropriate conveyor and do not drift on to the next downstream conveyor. Variables to consider when locating PECs include: conveyor belt speed, conveyor belt drift, tracking zone vs. non-tracking zone, and communication time between PLC and PEC. Appendix D1 describes the Placement of Photoelectric Cells requirements.

4.2.5.2  Error Bags at Checked Baggage Resolution Area (CBRA)

Error bags are all bags that arrive at the CBRA that are not valid EDS OOG bags or are not valid non-clear bags with BHS tracking IDs. Minimizing the error rate is important because it directly affects the burden on screening staff at the CBRA and can increase operating costs for the system. Testing will be conducted on the CBIS to evaluate the system’s error rate. Appendix D1 describes the Error Bags at CBRA requirements.

4.2.6  Bag Tag Identification

Bag tag identification is a method whereby a tag or chip with a unique machine-readable ID number is physically attached to each bag and linked to the passenger name record (PNR). The bag tag is positively identified by scanning or reading the attached tag or chip and calling up information from the PNR. This information can be used by the CBIS to support the BHS tracking ID in routing the bag or to alert screeners of the passenger’s selectee status. The technology used for positive identification may be either optical or radio frequency (RFID) based, as long as the technology does not effect CBIS throughput performance. Positive Bag Identification shall not be the primary method utilized for positive bag tracking. The primary method for positive bag tracking shall be the BHS Tracking ID. Appendix D1 describes the Positive Bag Identification requirements.

4.2.7  Conveyor Control

In order to properly maintain baggage tracking, CBIS designs must provide for sufficient conveyor control through the use of the components/design principles listed below.
4.2.7.1 **Dynamic Braking**
Dynamic braking assists with the prevention of conveyor belts coasting and thus maintaining proper tracking of bags in all tracking zones. Appendix D1 describes the Dynamic Braking requirements.

4.2.7.2 **Variable Frequency Drives**
Variable frequency drives (VFDs) should be used on conveyors that requiring frequent stopping and starting. Appendix D1 describes the Variable Frequency Drive requirements.

4.2.7.3 **Gradual Conveyor Speed Transitions**
Significant consecutive conveyor speed transitions often result in bag spacing problems that can lead to baggage tracking losses. It is advised that the transitions in conveyor belt speeds between any two consecutive conveyor belts be in a range so as not to affect the stability, orientation, or spacing of bags while still maintaining accurate tracking of the bags. Appendix D1 describes the Conveyor Speed Transitions requirements.

4.2.8 **Avoidance of Steep Conveyor Slopes**
Steep slopes lead to baggage rolling and sliding on the conveyor, which often results in tracking losses, bag jams, and bags doubling up. Double bags inducted into the EDS are likely to result in machine faults, reduced throughput, equipment down time, increased maintenance, and a reduced level of security. Keeping incline and decline angles to a minimum is required. Appendix D1 describes the Conveyor Slope requirements.

4.2.9 **Divert and Merge**
The proper use of diverters, pushers, and merges is essential to reducing tracking errors and bag jams. Requirements related to the following BHS components are defined in Appendix D1:

- Static-ploughs and roller diverters
- Directly opposing diverters
- Pushers
- Improper and Unnecessary Merging/Diverting
- 90-Degree Merges/Diverts
- Merges at EDS Output

4.2.10 **Conveyable Items**
Items that are conveyable in a CBIS vary from system to system. Variables that determine this are: BHS equipment used, EDS equipment used, legacy system constraints, cost vs. operational advantages, etc. Items that may not be conveyable due to size, shape, or weight may be conveyable if placed in a baggage tub. The use of tubs can significantly enhance the ability to maintain positive tracking and
minimize bag jams. Tub use should be encouraged whenever bags are irregularly shaped (e.g., car seats, rounded duffels, garment bags, etc.) and straps or obtrusions are present as well as when bags are lightweight. Appendix D1 describes the Conveyable Items requirements.

### 4.2.10.1 Proper Handling of Oversize Bags

Oversize bags are bags that have been specified by the CBIS designer to be too large to be transported by the standard BHS. See Appendix D1 for requirements.

### 4.2.10.2 Proper Handling of Out-of-Gauge Bags

Out-of-Gauge (OOG) bags are bags that have been specified by the CBIS designer to be too large to fit through the EDS machine. See Appendix D1 for requirements.

### 4.2.11 Fail Safe Operation

All CBISs shall be designed to be an entirely fail-safe operation. A fail-safe operation is one that, in the event of any system or component failure affecting the CBIS, does not convey any suspect or non-clear bags to an airside location where they would be mistaken for cleared bags and loaded onto a flight. Such failures include but are not limited to power outages, bag mistracking or misreading, diverter malfunctions, and bag jams. During such failures the default path for any non-clear bag must be to a secure location—non-clear bags shall not be sent to an airside location. Appendix D1 describes the Fail Safe requirements.

### 4.2.12 Image Quality (IQ) Test Requirements

The CBIS shall support secure and safe handling of the IQ test bag. Appendix D1 describes the IQ Test requirements.

### 4.2.13 Bag Orientation/Positioning

The effective application of bag orientation/positioning devices are accomplished by the proper application of static deflectors and belt type to nudge bags or tubs off of side walls to improve system throughput prior to baggage induction to EDS equipment, automatic tag readers (ATRs), or baggage measuring arrays (BMAs). Appendix D1 describes Bag Orientation / Positioning requirements.

### 4.2.14 Bag Jam Rate

Testing will be conducted to demonstrate the frequency of bag jams in the CBIS. The Site Specific Test Plan (SSTP) will specify the testing procedure and performance criteria to be met. Appendix D1 describes Bag Jam Rate requirements.

### 4.2.15 BHS Displays at CBRA

BHS graphic status displays shall be employed on all removal points within the CBRA. Appendix D1 describes the BHS Displays at CBRA requirements.
4.2.16 Alarmed Bag Images at CBRA

Testing will be conducted to demonstrate that the number of alarmed bag images sent to CBRA matches the actual number of alarmed bags that arrive at CBRA. Appendix D1 describes the requirements for Alarmed Bag Images at CBRA.

4.2.17 Placement of Reinsertion Points

To prevent reduced throughput and potential baggage tracking problems, reinsertion of cleared or non-cleared bags between the exit of an EDS machine and the associated decision point shall be prohibited. Appendix D1 describes the requirements for Placement of Reinsertion Points.

4.2.18 Purge Line

The purge line connects the alarm line beyond the Level 2 decision point to the main line feeding the EDS lines. These conveyors allow bags to be automatically reintroduced into the main line feeding the EDS lines in the event of an individual EDS machine failure when necessary. Appendix D1 describes the Purge Line requirements.

4.2.19 Recirculation Loops

CBISs shall be designed without recirculation loops to prevent reduction in CBIS performance and the mixing of bags screened by EDS with those that have not yet been screened. Appendix D1 describes Recirculation Loop requirements.

4.2.20 Power Turns after EDS

Power turns immediately following the EDS exit shall be avoided. Appendix D1 describes the requirements for Power Turns after EDS.

4.2.21 Non-Powered Rollers

Non-powered rollers shall be avoided as much as possible when designing the CBIS, as they can cause bag jams and tracking losses as bags slow, hang, and get caught on the rollers. Frequent cleaning is also required as bag tags and other stickers get caught and adhere to the rollers. Appendix D1 describes the requirements for Non-Powered Rollers.

4.2.22 Draft Curtains

When used, draft curtains should be positioned to remain clear of the nearest PEC.

4.2.23 Accessibility of EDS Machines for Operation, Maintenance and Replacement

In addition to individual EDS machine access requirements as supplied by the EDS vendor, the CBIS requires a certain degree of acceptable access for the routine operations and maintenance of the units. Items such as forklift access and/or overhead trolley with hoist system for transport of heavy spare parts should be
considered, but will be system dependant. Access routes for EDS equipment replacement shall also be considered. Appendix D1 describes the requirements for EDS machine accessibility.

4.2.24 Location for Staging Equipment Prior to Installation

Planners and designers should ensure that conditioned space is provided to store newly delivered screening equipment prior to its installation and commissioning. The acceptability of the identified space should be confirmed with TSA and documented on phasing plans.

4.2.25 CBIS Reporting

Investment in CBIS error logging and reporting (or some other form of system diagnostic capability) is valuable in the operation of the CBIS. Such capability allows for monitoring of the CBIS performance so that developing problems can be spotted early, directing predictive and/or preventive maintenance efforts. Appendix D1 describes the minimum CBIS Reporting requirements.
Chapter 5

SYSTEM TYPES AND SCREENING EQUIPMENT

Most of the currently deployed EDS technology was developed prior to the passage of ATSA, based on standards set forth by Congress in the Aviation Security Improvement Act of 1990. After large-scale deployment of EDS in 2002 and 2003, equipment manufacturers have incrementally improved performance in terms of false alarm rates. The industry has begun to incorporate the lessons learned from initial in-line EDS installations to marginally improve throughput capabilities. In addition, new EDS equipment has been certified in the past year, including the Reveal CT-80 and L-3 3DX 6600. Much of the currently deployed EDS machines operate with throughput rates between 100 and 550 bags per hour (BPH).

In addition, several types of next generation EDS equipment currently being developed are expected to become available by Calendar Year (CY) 2008 with improved image quality and lower false alarm rates. Some of this next generation screening equipment is expected to have much higher throughput rates (in the range of 1,000 BPH).

This chapter presents a summary of screening system configurations and concept of operations, describes the EDS certification process, and summarizes the status of future technologies.

5.1 SCREENING SYSTEM CONFIGURATIONS

Every terminal at every airport is unique, with a particular set of zones and specific demand levels. As such, many baggage screening system types need to be considered to find the optimally scaled solution for each terminal. Many factors should be considered when selecting a specific system configuration, such as the airport or terminal zone scheme, demand levels for the various zones, and capital, operating, and maintenance costs for all alternatives for each zone, to determine the most cost-effective solution that is optimally scaled for that airport or terminal. The methodology for developing alternatives, comparing them, and selecting the preferred alternative is discussed in Chapter 9.

Baggage screening system types provide planners and designers with several alternative solutions to be considered during the design process. These system types range from highly integrated, highly automated and low labor-intensive systems (e.g., high-volume in-line) to low-automation and high labor-intensive systems (e.g., stand-alone EDS and ETD systems). Within each system type, several acceptable screening equipment models may be available, with similar throughput rates, false alarm rates, and OSR rates. Appendix B provides examples of generic concepts of baggage screening systems, operational assumptions for the generic baggage screening concepts, and best practices captured in the generic concepts.
Five types of screening system configurations are described below.

5.1.1 **System Type 1: High-Volume In-Line CBIS**

In-line systems using high-volume EDS are assumed to have a very high level of integration and a sophisticated in-line conveyor infrastructure, providing sufficient queuing capacity and OSR circulation time while maintaining high throughput and accurate bag tracking. These systems are assumed to have multiplexed EDS technology (i.e., the capability of linking multiple EDS machines with multiple view stations), centralized control room(s), OSR capability, a purge line, multiple baggage inputs, and checked baggage resolution area(s). Typically these systems would require automated baggage sortation.

![Figure 5-1](image)

The high-volume EDS machines are intended to provide solutions for airports that require fully automated in-line systems designed to handle very high peaks. System availability is projected to be in CY 2008; as such machines are currently in development under a number of TSA Project Phoenix programs and Manhattan II programs, or through other TSA involvement. Such machines are likely to be new equipment types, assuming that this equipment receives TSA certification by CY 2007 or early CY 2008. EDS types that seem to be likely candidates and that can be considered high-volume EDS machines are the Analogic AN XLB and the GE CTX-10K.
High-volume EDS machines are estimated to achieve at least a throughput of 900 BPH with a low false alarm rate. Also, these machines are expected to have improved image quality and better OSR operator tools (such as high resolution 3D images of alarmed bags and alarmed objects, as well as density stripping tools). These OSR tools will enable operators to reach higher clear rates.

Table 5-1 summarizes equipment assumptions for future high-volume EDS machines.

5.1.2 System Type 2: Medium-Volume In-Line CBIS

This system type includes the contemporary in-line system, in which current generation EDS machines are used. These systems typically have multiplexed EDS technology, relatively complex baggage handling system(s), control room(s) (central or local), OSR capability, a purge line, single or multiple baggage inputs, and checked baggage resolution area(s). Upfront capital costs can be reduced by using EDS machines with throughput rates ranging from 400 BPH to 700 BPH, as this range would allow for a reduction in the conveyor system size and complexity (compared to high-volume in-line systems).

The assumed EDS throughput of 500 BPH to 700 BPH is expected to be achievable with either new equipment, such as the L-3 3DX 6600 (formerly AN6400), or by upgrading existing equipment, such as an L-3 3DX 6000 to the L-3 3DX 6600 or a GE CTX-9000 to a GE CTX-9800 (currently under development and not TSA certified). Table 5-2 summarizes equipment assumptions for medium-volume TSA EDS machines.
5.1.3 System Type 3: Mini In-Line CBIS

A mini in-line system would typically incorporate a simpler conveyor design and require a smaller footprint. These systems can be located closer to airline ticket counters or make-up devices, which can help reduce travel time and the likelihood of improper baggage sorting. Typically, a mini in-line system would be located on the take-away belt in the bag room or in the Airline Ticket Office (ATO) area and would include only one or two EDS machines to minimize integration costs. Due to the decentralized nature of these systems, staff and equipment needs would generally be higher than for centralized systems (such as in-line systems using high-volume or medium-volume EDS); however, upfront capital costs would be significantly lower.

Figure 5-3
SCHEMATIC VISUALIZATION OF A MINI IN-LINE SYSTEM
### Table 5-1

**POTENTIAL HIGH-VOLUME EDS MACHINES—EQUIPMENT ASSUMPTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Realizable throughput (bags per hour) (a)</th>
<th>False alarm rate (b)</th>
<th>OSR clear rate (c)</th>
<th>OSR time (sec) (c)</th>
<th>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Service area (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Environmental operating envelope</th>
<th>Weight (lb) (d)</th>
<th>Floor loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</th>
<th>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</th>
<th>Average percent of OOG bags (e)</th>
<th>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic</td>
<td>XLB</td>
<td>1,050-1,200</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>208x87x86</td>
<td>208x123x86</td>
<td>Temp 14-113 °F, Humid. 10-95% NC</td>
<td>8,200</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>120/51x39x23 (g)</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>CTX-10K</td>
<td>860-990</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>188x95x87</td>
<td>188x175x108</td>
<td>Temp 15-120 °F, Humid. 10-85% NC</td>
<td>17,000</td>
<td>488</td>
<td>71x39x24</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SSI = Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain the SSI version of this table.

(a) The high-end of the range shown is based on expected annual U.S. average throughput for domestic flights, while the low-end of the range is based on international flights (for more information, please consult the SSI version of this table). Realizable throughput is based on varying bag sizes and bag content assuming 12 inch bag spacing is provided by baggage handling system. Average bag size for international bags is assumed to be 34 inches. Average bag size for domestic bags is assumed to be 28 inches. Increases in average bag length will reduce throughput. Reducing bag spacing will increase EDS throughput. Instantaneous peak throughputs can be higher than average hourly throughput, which may assist processing baggage micro-surges. Throughput for non-continuous feed machines is calculated based on machine constants and collected field data, which includes belt acceleration, gantry speed, software latency, and average slices per bag.

(b) Range of expected annual average false alarm rate of EDS. For more information, please consult the SSI version of this table.

(c) On-screen resolution (OSR) clear rate and clear time estimates are based on approved TSA alarm resolution protocol as well as expected EDS image quality and alarm resolution tools provided to screeners on EDS bag viewing stations (or threat resolution interfaces). The estimated clear rate and clear time are annual averages for domestic and international flights (with varying bag content and varying bag images).

(d) Floor loading based on average floor loading at machine feet.

(e) Out-of-gauge (OOG) percent is based on annual average for domestic and international flights (with varying bag sizes) and of maximum bag dimensions specified by baggage handling system designers and EDS manufacturers. The OOG is assumed to be determined by the belt width of the scanning module.

(f) Life-cycle assumptions are based on TSA and EDS vendor input. The useful life is defined to begin on the date of the factory acceptance test, and the refurbishment option for EDS is assumed to extend useful life by 4 years. It has been suggested by an EDS vendor that the useful life of some next generation EDS may be ten years rather than seven.

(g) AN XLB can scan and display up to 51 inch long bags on a single display but also scan and display up to 120 inch long bags using a split bag display function.

Note: Assumptions are based on information obtained from EDS manufacturers as well as the Transportation Security Laboratory (TSL), as systems are currently in development under a number of TSA’s Project Phoenix programs and Manhattan II programs, or through other TSA involvement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Realizable Throughput (bags per hour) (a)</th>
<th>False alarm rate (b)</th>
<th>OSR clear rate (c)</th>
<th>OSR time (sec) (c)</th>
<th>Dimensions (LxWxH inch) (d)</th>
<th>Service area (LxWxH inch) (d)</th>
<th>Environmental operating envelope</th>
<th>Weight (lb) (e)</th>
<th>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (f)</th>
<th>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (f)</th>
<th>Average percent of OOG bags (f)</th>
<th>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (g)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>CTX-9400 (h)</td>
<td>425-490 SSI SSI</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>188x95x87</td>
<td>188x175x108</td>
<td>Temp 15-120 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 10-85% NC</td>
<td>17,000</td>
<td>488</td>
<td>55x39x24</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>CTX-9800 (h)</td>
<td>600-680 (i) SSI SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>188x95x87</td>
<td>188x175x108</td>
<td>Temp 15-120 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 10-85% NC</td>
<td>17,000</td>
<td>488</td>
<td>71x39x24</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3</td>
<td>3DX 6000</td>
<td>470-540 SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>208x81x86</td>
<td>208x117x86</td>
<td>Temp 32-104 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 85% NC</td>
<td>8,600</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>62x32x25</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3</td>
<td>3DX 6600</td>
<td>470-540 SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>208x81x86</td>
<td>208x117x86</td>
<td>Temp 32-104 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 85% NC</td>
<td>8,600</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>120/63x32x25 (j)</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SSI = Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain the SSI version of this table.

(a) The high-end of the range shown is based on expected annual U.S. average throughput for domestic flights, while the low-end of the range is based on international flights. For more information, please consult the SSI version of this table. Realizable throughput is based on varying bag sizes and bag content assuming 12 inch bag spacing is provided by baggage handling system. Average bag size for international bags is assumed to be 28 inches. Increases in average bag length will reduce throughput. Reducing bag spacing will increase EDS throughput. Instantaneous peak throughputs can be higher than average hourly throughput, which may assist processing baggage micro-surges. Throughput for non-continuous feed machines (CTX-9400) is calculated based on machine constants and collected field data, which includes belt acceleration, gantry speed, software latency, and average slices per bag.

(b) Range of expected annual average false alarm rate of EDS. For more information, please consult the SSI version of this table.

(c) On-screen resolution (OSR) clear rate and clear time estimates are based on approved TSA alarm resolution protocol as well as expected EDS image quality and alarm resolution tools provided to screeners on EDS bag viewing stations (or threat resolution interfaces). The estimated clear rate and clear time are annual averages for domestic and international flights (with varying bag content and varying bag images).

(d) Dimensions and weight include two 60-inch tunnels (input and exit tunnel).

(e) Floor loading based on average floor loading at machine feet.

(f) Maximum baggage dimensions represent maximum in every dimension and not maximum dimensions of an actual bag that can fit into EDS. For example with the L-3 3DX 6500D or L-3 3DX 6000, at maximum width of 32 inches the maximum height of a bag can be 14 inches. Out-of-gauge (OOG) percent is based on annual average for domestic and international flights (with varying bag sizes) and of maximum bag dimensions specified by baggage handling system designers and EDS manufacturers. The OOG is assumed to be determined by the belt width of the scanning module.

(g) Life-cycle assumptions are based on TSA and EDS vendor input. The useful life is defined to begin on the date of the factory acceptance test, and the refurbishment option for EDS is assumed to extend useful life by 4 years. It has been suggested by an EDS vendor that the useful life of some next generation EDS may be ten years rather than seven.

(h) Assumptions are based on information obtained from EDS manufacturers as well as the Transportation Security Laboratory (TSL). Systems are currently in development under a number of TSA’s Project Phoenix programs and Manhattan II programs, or through other TSA involvement.

(i) CTX 9800 assumed throughput based on optimal 12 inch bag spacing; throughput can be higher if shorter bag spacing can be achieved based on manufacturer specification of 10 inch bag spacing (e.g. 700-800 bph).

(j) The L-3 3DX 6600 can scan and display up to 63 inch long bags on a single display but also scan and display up to 120 inch long bags using a split bag display function.

The mini-in-line system would reduce upfront capital costs by using EDS machines with throughputs on the order of 100 BPH to 400 BPH in locations where there is no economic justification to design and implement a full in-line system. With such a system, it would be possible to use EDS equipment that is (1) currently still in warehouses waiting to be deployed, (2) going to be removed from sites where high-volume or medium-volume EDS machines will be installed, or (3) next generation small EDS that can be easily integrated into existing conveyor infrastructure.

The assumed EDS throughput of 100 BPH to 400 BPH is currently known to be achievable with current equipment, such as the L-3 3DX 6000, the GE CTX-5500 (with ViewLink add-on), or the Reveal CT-80 (with the ImageNet add-on). In addition, other future technologies, projected to be available in FFY 2008 (such as the Analogic King Cobra and CT-800), could be used in this configuration, assuming that this equipment receives TSA certification by late CY 2007 to early CY 2008.

Typically with mini in-line systems, a centralized OSR room is not as staff efficient as using combined OSR/ETD operations. In this operation, a Level 3 screener would place an alarmed bag on the ETD table, retrieve the corresponding image, conduct OSR, and, if the bag cannot be cleared using OSR, the same screener would then conduct a directed trace search for that bag based on the bag images. Where baggage volumes are relatively low, TSA screeners in the CBRAs can perform both OSR and ETD screening functions, achieving better utilization than TSA screeners dedicated to each screening function.

With higher baggage volumes, centralized OSR rooms become a more cost-effective option than the combined OSR/ETD option. Therefore, if the airport-specific design supports a centralized CBRA, a centralized OSR room should be considered as well.

There are other possible configurations for a mini in-line system with a lower level of integration. Less integrated systems require less upfront capital investment but are relatively more labor-intensive compared to the above-mentioned types of mini in-line systems. One example is an S-configuration of input queue conveyor (as seen on Figure 5-4 on the following page). With this example, as four ticket counters feed a single EDS machine, the overall baggage demand is typically no higher than 120 BPH.

However, it should be noted that systems placed close to ticket counters (and therefore with minimal conveyor distance leading to the EDS input) can be susceptible to dieback situations. Where bag demand generated by self service kiosks or other expedited check-in processes creates volume at a faster rate than traditional check-in methods, dieback can quickly occur because there is minimal queuing capacity on the conveyor system. Special consideration is required to anticipate ticket counter configurations and baggage delivery rates (including the variable nature of those rates) as part of the planning and design process for these systems.
Table 5-3 summarizes equipment assumptions for mini in-line EDS machines.
### Table 5-3

**POTENTIAL MINI IN-LINE EDS MACHINES—EQUIPMENT ASSUMPTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Realizable Throughput (bags per hour)</th>
<th>False alarm rate (b)</th>
<th>OSR clear rate (c)</th>
<th>OSR clear time (sec) (d)</th>
<th>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Service area (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Environmental operating envelope</th>
<th>Weight (lb) loading (lb/sq ft) (f)</th>
<th>Floor loading (lb/sq ft) (f)</th>
<th>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</th>
<th>Average percent of OOG bags (a)</th>
<th>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (j)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic</td>
<td>King Cobra</td>
<td>310-360 SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>144x72x62</td>
<td>144x96x62</td>
<td>Temp 14-113 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 10-95 % NC</td>
<td>5,800</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>177/63x32x26</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>CTX-5500 (with ViewLink)</td>
<td>210-230 SSI</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>172x24x86</td>
<td>188x175x28</td>
<td>Temp 50-80 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 10-60 % NC</td>
<td>9,350</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>39x27x27</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3</td>
<td>3DX 6000</td>
<td>350-400 (l) SSI</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>208x81x86</td>
<td>208x117x86</td>
<td>Temp 32-104 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 85 % NC</td>
<td>8,600</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>62x32x25</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal</td>
<td>CT-800</td>
<td>310-360 SSI</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>(h) (i)</td>
<td>113x55x58</td>
<td>113x79x58</td>
<td>Temp 41-104 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 5-85 % NC</td>
<td>4,878</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>47x32x25</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal</td>
<td>CT-80</td>
<td>110-130 SSI</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>(h) (k)</td>
<td>96x55x58</td>
<td>96x79x58</td>
<td>Temp 41-90 °F</td>
<td>Humid. 5-85 % NC</td>
<td>3,700</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>47x32x25</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>7 + 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SI Sensitive Security Information. Please consult TSA to obtain the SSI version of this table.**

(a) The high-end of the range shown is based on expected annual U.S. average throughput for domestic flights, while the low-end of the range is based on international flights (for more information, please consult the SSI version of this table).

Realizable throughput is based on varying bag sizes and bag content assuming 12 inch bag spacing is provided by baggage handling system. Average bag size for international bags is assumed to be 28 inches. Increases in average bag length will reduce throughput. Reducing bag spacing will increase EDS throughput. Instantaneous peak throughputs can be higher than average hourly throughput, which may assist processing baggage micro-surges. Throughput for non-continuous feed machines (CTX-5500 and CT-80) is calculated based on machine constants and collected field data, which includes belt acceleration, gantry speed, software latency, and average slices per bag.

(b) Range of expected annual average false alarm rate of EDS. For more information, please consult the SSI version of this table.

(c) On-screen resolution (OSR) clear rate and clear time estimates are based on approved TSA alarm resolution protocol as well as expected EDS image quality and alarm resolution tools provided to screeners on EDS baggage viewing stations (or threat resolution interfaces). The estimated clear rate and clear time are annual averages for domestic and international flights (with varying bag content and varying bag images).

(d) Floor loading based on average floor loading at machine feet.

(e) Maximum baggage dimensions represent maximum in every dimension and not maximum dimensions of an actual bag that can fit into EDS. For example with the L-3 3DX 6500D or L-3 3DX 6000, at maximum width of 32 inches the maximum height of a bag can be 14 inches. Out-of-gauge (OOG) percent is based on annual average for domestic and international flights (with varying bag sizes) and of maximum bag dimensions specified by baggage handling system designers and EDS manufacturers. The OOG is assumed to be determined by the belt width of the scanning module.

(f) Life-cycle assumptions are based on TSA and EDS vendor input. The useful life is defined to begin on the date of the factory acceptance test, and the refurbishment option for EDS is assumed to extend useful life by 4 years. It has been suggested by an EDS vendor that the useful life of some next generation EDS may be ten years rather than seven.

(g) Assumptions are based on information obtained from EDS manufacturers as well as the Transportation Security Laboratory (TSL). Systems are currently in development under a number of TSA’s Project Phoenix programs and Manhattan II programs, or through other TSA involvement.

(h) It is assumed that the ETD search tables (at Level 3) also have bag viewing stations that allow screeners to view alarm bag images at the ETD search station. Viewing bag images allows screener to quickly follow OSR protocol and clear a certain percentage of those alarm bags based on the OSR clear rate for the specified EDS. Bags that cannot be cleared using OSR protocol are screened using a directed trace method (using the bag image to direct the search to alarm objects and using ETD equipment to screen those alarm objects). This method is referred to as combined OSR/ETD and is more efficient when screening alarm bags (at Level 3) compared to using ETD (directed trace) only (i.e., without clearing some bags using OSR at the ETD search tables). The throughput of the combined OSR/ETD process is driven by the OSR clear rate of the EDS as well as screening OSR clear time for that EDS and the throughput of one ETD units with two search stations each with a screener (national average assumed to be 24.2).

(i) It should be assumed that the combined OSR/ETD average throughput using Analogic King Cobra with AVS and Reveal CT-800 with ImageNet to view bag images is 45.3 bph.

(j) The Analogic King Cobra can scan and display up to 63 inch long bags on a single display but also scan and display up to 177 inches long bags using a split bag display function.

(k) It should be assumed that the combined OSR/ETD average throughput using CTX-5500 with ViewLink or CT-80 with ImageNet to view bag images is 34.5bph with a mix of international bags and domestic bags.

(l) The L-3 3DX 6000 can achieve higher throughput rates when installed into a full in-line baggage handling system with a higher level of integration. However, when used in a mini in-line system with a lower level of integration and more labor-intensive operation, the machine throughput is limited by the CBIS and its relatively lower level of integration. Therefore, throughput is set to only 350 to 400 bph based on suboptimal bag spacing averaging at 26 – 28 inches due to the stochastic nature of the check-in process and manual loading of baggage on take-away belts.

(m) CT-80 false alarm rate will potentially be reduced with new software expected to become available in 2008.

(n) CT-80 maximum bag length will potentially be increased with an upgrade expected to become available in 2008.

5.1.4 System Type 4: Stand-Alone EDS

In small airports or in specific zones with low baggage volumes at larger airports, stand-alone EDS may be the most cost-effective option. A stand-alone EDS operates in a manner similar to lobby screening nodes installed today at many Category X and Category I airports; however, where possible, stand-alone equipment should be installed in baggage make-up areas or other appropriate locations to reduce lobby congestion. This screening system is relatively labor intensive, but minimal capital investment is required to install the system and support the operation. In some stand-alone systems, combined OSR/ETD can be used (e.g., with GE CTX-2500 and GE CTX-5500 using ViewLink, Reveal CT-80 using ImageNet that allows for remote bar code or RFID enabled Resolution as well as multiplexing and other future technologies).
A stand-alone system would significantly reduce upfront capital costs by using currently available EDS machines with throughputs on the order of 100 BPH to 200 BPH in locations where there is no economic justification to design and implement an in-line system. A stand-alone system would allow the use of EDS equipment that is: (1) currently still in warehouses waiting to be deployed or (2) going to be removed from sites where in-line EDS machines will be installed. The assumed EDS throughput of 100 BPH to 200 BPH is achievable with current equipment: the Reveal CT-80, the GE CTX-2500, the GE CTX-5500, or the L-3 3DX 6000. In addition, next generation small EDS such as the Analogic King Cobra and Reveal CT-800 could be used in this configuration.

Table 5-4 summarizes equipment assumptions for stand-alone EDS machines.
### Table 5-4

#### POTENTIAL STAND-ALONE EDS MACHINES—EQUIPMENT ASSUMPTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Realizable Throughput (bags per hour) (a)</th>
<th>False alarm rate (b)</th>
<th>OSR clear rate (c)</th>
<th>OSR time (sec) (c)</th>
<th>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Service area (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Environmental operating envelope</th>
<th>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</th>
<th>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</th>
<th>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</th>
<th>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</th>
<th>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic</td>
<td>King Cobra (g)</td>
<td>180-220 SSI SSI 20 144x72x62 144x96x62</td>
<td>False alarm rate (b)</td>
<td>OSR clear rate (c)</td>
<td>OSR time (sec) (c)</td>
<td>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Service area (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Environmental operating envelope</td>
<td>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</td>
<td>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</td>
<td>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>CTX-2500</td>
<td>100-120 SSI SSI 30 97x75x80 133x111x116 Temp 14-113 °F Humid. 10-95% NC</td>
<td>False alarm rate (b)</td>
<td>OSR clear rate (c)</td>
<td>OSR time (sec) (c)</td>
<td>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Service area (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Environmental operating envelope</td>
<td>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</td>
<td>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</td>
<td>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>CTX-5500</td>
<td>180-220 SSI SSI 30 172x75x80 188x175x108 Temp 50-80 °F Humid. 10-60% NC</td>
<td>False alarm rate (b)</td>
<td>OSR clear rate (c)</td>
<td>OSR time (sec) (c)</td>
<td>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Service area (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Environmental operating envelope</td>
<td>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</td>
<td>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</td>
<td>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3</td>
<td>3DX 6000</td>
<td>180-220 SSI SSI 20 208x81x86 208x117x86 Temp 32-104 °F Humid. 85% NC</td>
<td>False alarm rate (b)</td>
<td>OSR clear rate (c)</td>
<td>OSR time (sec) (c)</td>
<td>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Service area (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Environmental operating envelope</td>
<td>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</td>
<td>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</td>
<td>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal</td>
<td>CT-800 (g)</td>
<td>180-200 SSI SSI 20 113x55x58 113x79x58 Temp 41-104 °F Humid. 5-85% NC</td>
<td>False alarm rate (b)</td>
<td>OSR clear rate (c)</td>
<td>OSR time (sec) (c)</td>
<td>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Service area (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Environmental operating envelope</td>
<td>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</td>
<td>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</td>
<td>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal</td>
<td>CT-80</td>
<td>110-130 SSI (i) SSI 30 96x55x58 96x79x58 Temp 41-90 °F Humid. 5-85% NC</td>
<td>False alarm rate (b)</td>
<td>OSR clear rate (c)</td>
<td>OSR time (sec) (c)</td>
<td>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Service area (LxWxH inch)</td>
<td>Environmental operating envelope</td>
<td>Weight (lb) (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Floor Loading (lb/sq ft) (d)</td>
<td>Max bag size (LxWxH inch) (e)</td>
<td>Average percent of OOG bags (c)</td>
<td>Useful life + life after refurb. (years) (f)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SSI** = Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain the SSI version of this table.

(a) The realizable throughput is taken to be the lesser of the machine throughput and the system configuration’s inherent throughput limit (which is based on the rate at which bags can be manually loaded into the EDS machine). High-end of the range shown is based on expected annual U.S. average throughput for domestic flights, while the low-end of the range is based on international flights (for more information, please consult the SSI version of this table). Realizable throughput is based on varying bag sizes and bag content. Instantaneous peak throughputs can be higher than average hourly throughput, which may assist processing baggage micro-surges. Throughput for non-continuous feed machines (CTX-2500, CTX-5500 and CT-80) is calculated based on machine constants and collected field data, which includes belt acceleration, gantry speed, software latency, and average slices per bag.

(b) Range of expected annual average false alarm rate of EDS. For more information, please consult the SSI version of this table.

(c) On-screen resolution (OSR) clear rate and clear time estimates are based on approved TSA alarm resolution protocol as well as expected EDS image quality and alarm resolution tools provided to screeners on EDS bag viewing stations (or threat resolution interfaces). The estimated clear rate and clear time are annual averages for domestic and international flights (with varying bag content and varying bag images).

(d) Floor loading based on average floor loading at machine feet.

(e) Maximum baggage dimensions represent maximum in every dimension and not maximum dimensions of an actual bag that can fit into EDS. For example with the AN King Cobra or L-3 3DX 6000, at maximum width of 32 inches the maximum height of a bag can be 14 inches. Out-of-gauge (OOG) percent is based on annual average for domestic and international flights (with varying bag sizes) and of maximum bag dimensions specified by baggage handling system designers and EDS manufacturers. The OOG is assumed to be determined by the belt width of the scanning module.

(f) Life-cycle assumptions are based on TSA and EDS vendor input. The useful life is defined to begin on the date of the factory acceptance test, and the refurbishment option for EDS is assumed to extend useful life by 4 years. It has been suggested by an EDS vendor that the useful life of some next generation EDS may be ten years rather than seven.

(g) Assumptions are based on information obtained from EDS manufacturers as well as the Transportation Security Laboratory (TSL). Systems are currently in development under a number of TSA’s Project Phoenix programs and Manhattan II programs, or through other TSA involvement.

(h) The Analogic King Cobra can scan and display up to 63 inch long bags on a single display but also scan and display up to 177 inch long bags using a split bag display function.

(i) CT-80 false alarm rate will potentially be reduced with new software expected to become available in 2008.

(j) CT-80 maximum bag length will potentially be increased with an upgrade expected to become available in 2008.

5.1.5 System Type 5: Stand-Alone ETD Systems

ETD equipment is currently used for primary screening (as an alternative to EDS screening and as a means to screen oversize, fragile, and other baggage that cannot be screened using EDS) and for resolution of EDS alarms. This section describes ETD systems for both applications.

5.1.5.1 Primary Screening

Stand-alone ETD equipment can currently be used for 100% screening in lobbies, baggage make-up areas, or other appropriate locations. Baggage is screened using a TSA-approved protocol for primary screening. For security and operational reasons, the BSIS Working Group recommended that TSA deploy EDS to all Category X, I, II, and III airports as part of the BSIS Working Group Report issued to ASAC on August 9, 2006. ETD will therefore be used only at Category IV airports for primary screening and at other airports to screen oversize, fragile, and other baggage that cannot be screened using EDS.

Figure 5-6
SCHEMATIC VISUALIZATION OF A STAND-ALONE ETD SYSTEM
As ETD screening is the most labor-intensive screening method and has the lowest throughput compared with all other methods, ETD is only appropriate at small airports with low baggage volumes. A stand-alone ETD system typically has a throughput on the order of 33 BPH per screener (66 BPH per ETD machine shared by two screeners). This throughput is known to be achievable with current equipment, such as the GE Itemizer II, Smiths Detection IONSCAN 400B, or Thermodetection EGIS II.

5.1.5.2 Alarm Resolution

In addition, ETD equipment is used to screen EDS alarmed bags that have not been cleared by screeners using an OSR protocol (based on viewing bag images). This method is referred to as directed trace (or directed search using ETD) and is focused on identifying and locating alarm objects within baggage (that have triggered EDS alarms). A typical throughput using this method is 24.2 BPH per screener (a national average based on a mix of international and domestic bags of varying sizes, types, and content).

For some mini in-line configurations, a more staff efficient method of using directed trace can be achieved by using a combined OSR/ETD method. A typical throughput when using a combined OSR/ETD method is 34.5 BPH per screener if a CTX-5500 with ViewLink or CT-80 with ImageNet is used for primary screening or 45.3 BPH per screener if an Analogic King Cobra or CT-800 is used for primary screening (see Table 5-3).

Table 5-5 summarizes equipment assumptions for ETD machines.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Realizable throughput – primary (bags per hour per screener) (a)</th>
<th>Realizable throughput – alarm resolution (bags per hour per screener) (b)</th>
<th>False alarm rate</th>
<th>Dimensions (LxWxH inch)</th>
<th>Environmental operating envelope</th>
<th>Weight (lb)</th>
<th>Useful life (years)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>Itemizer II</td>
<td>33.0</td>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>19.8x18.9x14.9</td>
<td>Temp 32-104 °F Humid. 0-95% NC</td>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smiths</td>
<td>Ionscan 400B</td>
<td>33.0</td>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>13.0x15.5x13.5</td>
<td>Temp 32-104 °F Humid. 0-95% NC</td>
<td>47.0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermo-detection</td>
<td>EGIS III</td>
<td>33.0</td>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>10.0x22.0x22.0</td>
<td>Temp 32-104 °F Humid. 0-95% NC</td>
<td>60.0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SSI = Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain the SSI version of this table.

(a) An average throughput of 33.0 bph per screener is assumed when ETD is used for Level 1 screening of 100% of baggage. This is a national average of a mix of international and domestic bags of a variety of types and sizes and assumes 2 screeners per ETD machine.

(b) An average throughput of 24.2 bph is assumed when ETD is used for Level 3 screening when clearing EDS alarm bags (a method referred to as directed trace). This is a national average of a mix of international and domestic bags of a variety of types and sizes and assumes 2 screeners per ETD machine. For stand-alone EDS installations, it is assumed that the screener will have access to a print out or display alarm images. For in-line EDS installations, it is assumed that each screener will have a dedicated display to view alarm images.

Source: TSA, October 2007.
5.2 EDS CERTIFICATION PROCESS

TSA supports EDS development through multiple processes, but is most significantly involved in the final stages of EDS development when EDS equipment needs to be assessed and approved. Assessment and approval are under the auspices of the Transportation Security Laboratory (TSL) under two separate consistency assessments. The first is System Qualification Testing (SQT), which includes vendor-accomplished developmental testing and is not detection-related. The second is a detection-related conformity assessment, which depends primarily on TSL testing and consists of a Certification Readiness Test (CRT) and the formal Certification Test.

5.2.1 Non-Detection Related Assessments

Prior to SQT, the TSL reviews, witnesses, and approves vendor Developmental Test and Evaluation (DT&E) at the vendor’s plant. Following the DT&E, the TSL would conduct SQT involving selected demonstrations conducted at the TSL site for non-detection requirements, such as operability, reliability, usability, safety, communications, interfaces with conveyor controls, data loggers, training kits, information security, maintainability, emissions compatibility and susceptibility, and environmental factors.

On average, the SQT phase takes approximately 30 calendar days to complete.

After successful completion of SQT, the TSL would conduct separate tests to verify detection requirements (i.e., CRT and the Certification Test), as discussed in the following section.

5.2.2 Detection-Related Assessments

The CRT is a detection requirements conformance test, which is a condition for entry into formal Certification Testing. During the CRT, TSL and vendor personnel interact as an integral part of the EDS development process. The CRT is a relatively large and complex test design aimed at detecting specific algorithm deficiencies using a large number of unique test states.

On average, the CRT takes approximately 90 calendar days to complete.

The formal EDS Certification Test is a relatively smaller test design for measuring detection, false alarm, and throughput performance against TSA’s EDS Certification Standard. The Certification Test consists of two parts: the Preliminary Certification Preparatory Test (referred to as “Pre-Cert”) and the formal Certification Test. The Pre-Cert takes approximately 2 weeks for system/test set-up, test-operator training, system safety checks, a test dry-run, and a coarse test to check that it is performing as expected by the vendor. Based on Pre-Cert results, an EDS may be deemed not ready for a formal Certification Test and would be required to reenter the CRT process. If an EDS is deemed ready, the formal Certification Test takes 2 days to measure the detection rates and 1 day to measure the false alarm and throughput.
rates (assuming the throughput rate is in the range of 500 BPH; test duration is longer for EDS of lower throughput).

Completing the full detection-related conformity assessment typically requires several attempts. Experience with new EDS machines has shown that approximately 3 attempts and as many as 12 attempts may be required to complete this phase.

### 5.3 STATUS OF FUTURE TECHNOLOGIES

At the date of publication of these BSIS Guidelines, the current known status of several future technologies referenced in this document is as follows:

- The Analogic King Cobra (AN KC) and the Analogic XLB (AN XLB) are in the prototype stage and data collection at TSL has been completed. Both systems are now in final algorithm development and airport data collection and are targeted for completion of qualification and certification by the end of CY 2007. Expected availability of Analogic AN XLB and AN KC for pilot testing is early CY 2008.

- The Reveal CT-800 has recently conducted data collection at TSL. Certification is anticipated in early CY 2008 with availability in mid CY 2008 after field testing and pilots.

- The GE CTX-9800 is currently under development (Critical Design Review was completed in late March 2006) and is targeted for qualification and certification in early CY 2008. Expected availability is mid CY 2008.

- The GE CTX-10K is in early development stages by the vendor. Targeted availability is CY 2009.

- The SureScan X1000 is in prototype stage and based on initial data collection and internal testing, the vendor has determined that further research and development is needed on the system. R&D scope and schedule are yet to be determined by the vendor. Targeted availability is unknown at this point. Therefore, given the high-degree of uncertainty regarding when the SureScan x1000 will be available for deployment, performance specifications have been omitted from these Guidelines.

- Additional non-certified platforms (known as Advanced Technology or AT systems) are currently planned for data collection effort at the TSL in order to assess their performance.
The expected availability of each next-generation EDS machine, as well as upgrades to existing machines, is summarized in Table 5-6 below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacturer and Model</th>
<th>Expected Availability (CY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic AN XLB</td>
<td>2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 9400</td>
<td>2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 9800</td>
<td>2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 10K</td>
<td>2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-5500 w/ViewLink Upgrade</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-2500</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upgrade to 3DX 6600</td>
<td>2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6600</td>
<td>2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upgrade</td>
<td>2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-800</td>
<td>2008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: TSA and EDS Vendors, June 2007.
Chapter 6

BAGGAGE SCREENING DEMAND

This chapter documents the methodology to determine the design demand required to size optimal screening system(s) within an airport terminal. As explained in detail in the following paragraphs, the steps below summarize the methodology:

1. Divide an airport terminal into screening zones
2. Match the appropriate airlines to the zones
3. Select a design base flight schedule
4. Generate the base checked baggage demand
5. Project the base checked baggage demand to the design year

This methodology is meant only for the Pre-Design phase of the project when the focus is on equipment sizing, rather than on system performance. During later phases of design, simulation is required to refine equipment requirements and evaluate system performance. As such, detailed design-day flight schedules that reflect the best information available regarding future demand levels will be required.

Appendix C provides a case study on how these initial steps should be completed.

6.1 CATEGORIZATION INTO SCREENING ZONES

Checked baggage screening systems can be designed to combine checked baggage from several airlines into a single system. As numerous options are available for combining baggage flows, planners should use their best judgment to capture (1) high-level architectural constraints and (2) airline operational constraints. It is recommended that more than one screening configuration and airline grouping be considered at the outset of a project to provide realistic alternatives for comparison.

One approach that could be used to determine feasible combinations of baggage flow is a zone hierarchy scheme that represents the spatial characteristics of airport terminals. Figure 6-1 shows a sample scheme for a tri-level hierarchy (F1, F2, and F3).
Each element in the hierarchy represents a spatially feasible zone for an EDS screening system, be it at a small, decentralized level or at a large, consolidated level:

- **F1 Zone Definition**—An F1 zone is the largest feasible zone in a terminal for a centralized in-line system. These zones may accommodate multiple airlines that share an EDS screening system and are usually served by multiple baggage belts with sortation functionality downstream from the screening area.

- **F3 Zone Definition**—On the other end of the spectrum, an F3 zone is the smallest feasible zone in the terminal where a highly decentralized EDS is likely to be preferred and is usually served by a single take-away baggage belt. A dominant airline in a terminal with multiple baggage belts would have a number of F3 zones.

- **F2 Zone Definition**—An F2 zone represents a screening solution that fits somewhere between the F1 and F3 zones, and is usually determined by the feasibility of two or more adjacent airlines sharing their screening and baggage handling facilities (e.g., a common baggage make-up area).

For example, Figure 6-2 shows the western half of the ticketing lobby and associated baggage make-up area at Albuquerque International Sunport (ABQ). The ticket lobby, ATOs, and baggage make-up areas are all located on one contiguous level.
Figure 6-2

ASSUMED SCREENING ZONES AT ALBUQUERQUE INTERNATIONAL SUNPORT
One potential method of developing a zone hierarchy for ABQ would be the following:

- **F3 Zones**: Each take-away belt is assigned to an F3 zone.

- **F2 Zones**: Take-away belts that are all located within an existing, contiguous make-up area are defined in this example as a single F2 zone.

- **F1 Zones**: Since the ticketing lobby, the ATO, and baggage make-up areas are physically divided by the entrance hall into west and east sides, each side is designated as a single F1 zone. It would be impractical and expensive to screen all bags in a single centralized system for the entire airport; thus, at ABQ, two separate F1 zones were identified.

Since the subdivision of a terminal into zones is subjective, a detailed explanation of the reasons that a particular terminal screening zone hierarchy was selected over another hierarchy should be provided as part of the Preliminary Alternatives Analysis Report (see Chapter 3).

The screening zone selection is fundamental in generating baggage screening demand profiles and, ultimately, in determining the required baggage screening equipment, as explained in the following paragraphs.

### 6.2 CHECKED BAGGAGE FLOW GENERATION

The purpose of this section is to explain the methodology to be used to derive existing checked baggage flows for each screening zone. For the purposes of deriving screening equipment requirements, the ADPM shall be used as the design day.

The ADPM is to be used as the design day to ensure that systems are designed to meet average-day conditions in the peak month, with the understanding that contingency plans are in place, as discussed in Chapter 8. Where designing for the ADPM does not provide sufficient capacity given the agreed-upon contingency plans, alternative design days can be used with TSA approval.

The following paragraphs describe the key inputs necessary to derive the baggage flows for the ADPM.

#### 6.2.1 List of Airlines

All airlines (including charter airlines) operating in each of the screening zones should be identified.
6.2.2 Determination of the ADPM per Screening Zone

To identify the ADPM, it is necessary to first identify the peak month and then the average day in terms of originating bags as well as international recheck bags for each zone.

- For each screening zone, the total number of monthly originating bags and international recheck bags for all airlines in that zone should be calculated. The month with the maximum number of originating and international recheck bags is the peak month.

- For each screening zone, the total number of daily originating and international recheck bags for all airlines in that zone during the peak month should be calculated, and a mathematical average should be derived. The day on which the number of originating and international recheck bags is closest to the calculated mathematical average is the ADPM.

Depending on the airlines operating in each particular zone, the ADPM might differ from zone to zone.

Planners should include charter airline originating bags or international recheck bags if relevant and available when determining the ADPM for each particular zone.

6.2.3 Flight Schedule

Once the ADPM for each zone has been identified, a design-day flight schedule for each screening zone should be obtained. These flight schedules should only contain information on nonstop flights from the study airport. Flight schedules should specify for each flight: destination, flight departure time, flight number, published carrier, operator, aircraft type, and number of seats.

In addition, to derive international recheck baggage demand, it is necessary to know the arrival schedule of international flights whose passengers will connect to domestic flights. Baggage arriving from international destinations where security screening protocols differ from those used by TSA must be re-screened at the first United States port of entry before being loaded on any domestic flight.

6.2.4 Airline Load Factors

A load factor is the percentage of seats on a flight occupied by ticketed passengers. Load factors vary by flight (e.g., by airline, time of day, and destination), by day of the week, and by season. Extensive surveys conducted at airports nationwide and data obtained from domestic and international carriers show that peak-day load factors vary from 20% to 100%. Because of the wide variance in load factors, it is important to obtain the most accurate data that reflect the specific conditions of the selected ADPM directly from the airlines whenever possible.

In addition, load factors on international arrival flights must be obtained to derive international recheck baggage demand.
6.2.5  **Origin/Destination and Connecting Passenger Percentages**

Originating passengers are passengers whose itinerary begins at the airport under study; an originating passenger checks in with his/her airline and proceeds through the security checkpoint to the departure gate. Similar to load factors, the percentage of originating passengers may vary by flight (e.g., by time of day, destination, and airline), by day of the week, and by season.

Domestic flights departing prior to 9 a.m. have significantly higher percentages of originating passengers than those departing after 9 a.m. due to the nature of connecting passenger traffic. In general, the first arrival bank of domestic flights permits very few passengers to connect to flights departing from the airport prior to 9 a.m.; therefore, most of the passengers on those flights are originating passengers. Thus, the percentage of originating passengers before 9 a.m. is close to 100%, after 9 a.m., the percentage ranges anywhere from 5% to 100%.

Because of the wide variance in originating passenger percentages, it is important to obtain the most accurate data that reflect the specific conditions of the ADPM directly from the airlines whenever possible.

In addition, the percentage of passengers arriving on international flights and connecting to domestic flights must be obtained to derive international recheck baggage demand.

The estimated number of originating passengers is calculated using the number of seats, the load factor, and originating percentage assumptions for the ADPM.

\[
\text{Estimated Number of Originating Passengers} = \text{Seats} \times \text{Load Factor} \times \text{Percentage of Originating Passengers}
\]

The estimated number of connecting passengers from international to domestic flights is calculated using the number of arriving seats, the load factor, and connecting percentage assumptions for the ADPM.

\[
\text{Estimated Number of Connecting Passengers from International to Domestic Flights} = \text{Seats} \times \text{Load Factor} \times \text{Percentage of Connecting Passengers}
\]

6.2.6  **Earliness Distributions**

An earliness distribution specifies the percentage of passengers that arrive at the airport a specific number of minutes before their flights. The earliness distributions are used to determine the flow of departing passengers at the airport. There are significant differences in the earliness distributions among:

- Passengers on flights departing for domestic versus international destinations
- Passengers on flights departing before 9 a.m. and after 9 a.m.
Earliness distributions for flights departing before 9 a.m. generally are of shorter duration and thus more peaked; therefore, it is important to use the appropriate earliness distributions to accurately derive actual baggage flows.

Figure 6-3 shows example earliness distributions for domestic carriers; as shown, the distribution for flights departing before 9 a.m. exhibits higher peaking characteristics and has a much shorter duration than the distribution for flights departing after 9 a.m.
Figure 6-4 shows example earliness distributions for domestic and international carrier flights after 9 a.m.; as shown, the distribution variance for international carriers is higher than for domestic carriers and international passengers tend to arrive at the airport earlier.

Where possible, it is recommended that earliness distributions reflecting the specific conditions of the ADPM be obtained directly from the airlines.

### 6.2.7 Lateness Distributions

A lateness distribution specifies the percentage of passengers that exit the Federal Inspection Services (FIS) facility a specific number of minutes after their flights have landed. Specifically, the lateness distribution is applied to international recheck passengers that need their bags screened. Passengers arriving from international destinations where security screening is not conducted according to TSA protocols and connecting to domestic flights need to have their bags screened at the first port of entry into the United States before they are loaded onto any domestic flight. Lateness distributions have a much shorter duration than earliness distributions because all passengers deplane upon arrival within a relatively short period for a
given flight. For this reason, the international recheck baggage flows show marked peaks and have very short durations, as shown in the example on Figure 6-5.

![Figure 6-5: Example Lateness Distribution](image)

---

### 6.2.8 Checked Bags per Passenger

The average number of checked bags per originating passenger varies by airline, by destination, and by time of year. Extensive in-field data collection efforts and specific data provided by the airlines demonstrate that the actual numbers of checked bags per passenger are lower than the common “rules of thumb” of 1.5 bags for domestic flights and 2.0 bags for international flights used by many planners and designers. Generally, data collection efforts have shown that a more reasonable range is 0.95 to 1.00 bag per passenger for domestic airlines serving business markets, 1.00 to 1.15 bags per passenger for domestic airlines serving leisure markets, and 1.35 to 1.45 bags per passenger serving international markets (including international recheck passengers). These are very generic ranges, and planners should obtain specific values for the type of carriers and markets whenever possible. Planners should consider that recent protocol modifications prohibiting and subsequently limiting liquids in carry-on baggage may also affect these ratios.
The **estimated number of originating bags** is calculated using the estimated number of originating passengers and the checked bags per passenger assumptions for the ADPM:

\[
\text{Estimated Number of Originating Bags} = \text{Estimated Number of Originating Passengers} \times \text{Number of Checked Bags per Passenger}
\]

The **estimated number of international recheck bags** is calculated using the estimated number of connecting passengers from international to domestic flights and the international recheck bags per passenger assumptions for the ADPM:

\[
\text{Estimated Number of International Recheck Bags} = \text{Estimated Number of Connecting Passengers} \times \text{Number of International Recheck Bags per Passenger}
\]

The earliness and lateness distributions are used to derive the flows of originating and international recheck bags throughout the day. It is recommended that baggage flows be reported in 10-minute bins.*

Table 6-1 summarizes several potential sources of the key input data used to derive ADPM baggage flows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data</th>
<th>Source(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled airline activity</td>
<td>Official Airline Guides, Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charter airline activity</td>
<td>Airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charter airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airline boarding load factors</td>
<td>U.S. Department of Transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage of originating passengers</td>
<td>U.S. Department of Transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earliness and Lateness distributions</td>
<td>Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In-field surveys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checked bags per passenger</td>
<td>Airlines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In-field surveys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*10-minute bins (or increments) are recommended to ensure that sufficient capacity is provided to handle baggage flows with TSA’s goal of a 10-minute incremental service standard.*
6.2.9 Calibration of Flight Schedule-Driven Demand

It is recommended that, whenever possible, planners obtain actual baggage counts from all airlines that operate at the screening zones being considered for CBIS design. The above-mentioned methodology for generating baggage flows (using flight schedules, load factors, origin/destination percentage, earliness/lateness distributions, and ratio of bags per passenger) should be calibrated with the actual baggage counts of the relevant airlines. If a significant discrepancy in peak hour baggage flow (for the ADPM) is found between the two sources, then planners should consult with the ILDT (see Chapter 3) to resolve the discrepancy.

6.3 Future Baggage Flow Projections

The baggage flows derived using the process explained in the previous paragraphs represent the ADPM baggage flows for a particular screening zone in the base year. Baggage flows must be projected to a specific design year before they can be used to determine screening equipment requirements.

6.3.1 Design Year for Equipment Requirements

The design year for equipment requirements is assumed to be 5 years after the opening year for a given baggage screening system (i.e., DBU + 5 years). This assumption is based on current TSA policy for system approval. Thus, if a system is scheduled to become operational in 2008, the design year for that system will be 2013.

Baggage flow projections can be based on the Federal Aviation Administration’s (FAA’s) Terminal Area Forecast (TAF) or on the specific airport’s master plan forecast (if the master plan is current). In general, the FAA must approve the forecast used to project design year baggage flows. If, for any reason, local airport and airline staff and their consultants believe that the TAF or the master plan forecasts do not properly represent expected growth at the airport, a revised forecast and a detailed explanation of the reasons that the FAA-approved forecast is not acceptable should be provided to TSA for approval.

The growth rate from the TAF or master plan forecast may be uniformly applied to the current baggage flow, thus preserving current activity patterns, or applied differently if a detailed explanation of the reasons that the current activity pattern is expected to change is provided.

The methodology explained above is appropriate to initially size screening systems during the Pre-Design phase of a project. However, during the more detailed phases of design, it is recommended that simulation be used to refine equipment requirements and to evaluate system performance. Simulation analyses typically require development of a more detailed design-day flight schedule.
6.3.2 Accommodating Traffic Growth after the Design Year

The equipment requirements documented above are based on a design demand for 5 years beyond the system opening date (i.e., DBU + 5 years). It is likely that the initial system will have some excess capacity (e.g., equipment requirements are rounded up and therefore equipment will not necessarily reach 100% utilization after 5 years). This excess capacity should be used to accommodate as much traffic growth as possible before additional costs are incurred.

While increased system utilization may accommodate some additional demand, designers should also seek to provide low-cost flexibility options in the system to incorporate one or more of the following capacity enhancements:

1. Upgraded software and/or hardware to improve throughputs of installed equipment.
2. Reduced bag spacing to improve throughput of continuous-feed EDS equipment.
3. Replacement of installed equipment with higher-volume machines and necessary modifications to the BHS to support these machines.
4. Additional new equipment and associated BHS infrastructure.

In practice, a combination of one or more of the above approaches could be used. The choice of how additional capacity is provided will depend on the constraints of the terminal, degree of certainty about future traffic growth, the overall capacity of the terminal, and the optimal system type.

To accommodate future growth, some designs may require additional marginal upfront investment in conveyors or facilities. This additional investment can significantly lower long-term costs. For example, if expansion space is provided upfront instead of expanding space incrementally (as needed to accommodate growth beyond DBU + 5), then significant future savings could be achieved. As another example, when designing a medium-volume full in-line system, if the CBIS were designed so that it could accommodate high-volume EDS machines, then significant future savings (capital as well as O&M) may again be achieved where growth can be met by a relatively simple replacement of the medium-volume EDS machines.

The preferred screening alternative should then be selected considering local factors (such as expected future growth, ultimate gate capacity, overall terminal capacity, expected life of the terminal facility, and screening alternatives being considered). This selection should be made on a case-by-case basis.
Several examples of how additional capacity could be provided for specific system types are provided below:

- **High-Volume In-Line Systems**—It is unlikely that EDS throughput will be increased beyond 1,000 BPH in the foreseeable future. Accordingly, high-volume systems should be assumed to accommodate additional demand through the provision of additional equipment and associated BHS infrastructure. Therefore, if expected traffic growth warrants, designs should be developed that preserve space for additional equipment or provide areas where low-cost modifications to facilities might be possible to install additional machines.

- **Medium-Volume In-Line Systems**—These systems could be designed with sufficient queuing capacity, variable frequency drives, and other components to support replacement of medium-volume EDS machines with high-volume EDS machines to accommodate traffic growth. Alternatively, designs could be developed that preserve space for additional equipment or provide areas where low-cost modifications to facilities might be possible to install additional machines. The choice will depend on local traffic, spatial and operational considerations, and life-cycle cost projections.

- **Mini In-Line Systems**—As this system type is based on minimal BHS modifications, it is likely that the BHS of a mini in-line system will not support significantly higher-throughput EDS equipment without significant modifications. Therefore, growth beyond 5 years can be accommodated by (1) new machines and associated BHS infrastructure, (2) upgrading the BHS (and possibly the EDS) to support higher throughputs, or (3) replacing the mini in-line system with a medium-volume or high-volume in-line system.

- **Stand-Alone Systems**—Software and hardware improvements may increase system throughput (assuming that bags can be loaded into the EDS machines at a fast enough rate to fully utilize the machine). However, it is expected that additional machines will be the most likely means of enhancing capacity.

To determine when and if additional capacity will be required, baggage demand and system performance should be monitored and projected on an annual basis. Planners would then be able to anticipate the need for additional capacity and perform any necessary analyses to determine the most cost-effective approach to enhancing system capacity.

As discussed in more detail in Chapter 9, planners should conduct a 20-year life-cycle cost analysis for each screening alternative identified and the preferred alternative should be spatially feasible as well as have the lowest life-cycle cost. The life-cycle cost analysis should include an assessment of the overall costs of different approaches for accommodating growth.
Chapter 7

BAGGAGE SCREENING EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

This chapter provides a high-level methodology to determine EDS equipment requirements, OSR station requirements, and ETD screening station requirements in the Pre-Design phase as well as an overview of the approach recommended during later design phases to finalize equipment requirements.

During the Pre-Design phase, the focus is on determining how many EDS machines, OSR stations, and ETD screening stations are required, given a certain airline grouping, system type, and EDS equipment. Once all feasible screening zones (airline groupings) are determined and the baggage flow for each screening zone has been generated and projected to the design year, it is possible to determine the high-level equipment requirements for each screening zone.

7.1 REQUIREMENTS DURING THE PRE-DESIGN PHASE

During the Pre-Design phase, EDS equipment requirements, EDS equipment redundancy, OSR station requirements, and ETD screening station requirements need to be determined. For the purposes of determining EDS equipment requirements, the peak 10-minutes of the ADPM in the design year shall be used. OSR station requirements and ETD screening station requirements shall be based on the capacity of the EDS equipment.

7.1.1 EDS Equipment Requirements

The following key steps must be completed to determine EDS equipment requirements:

- Group airlines into screening zones (as discussed in Chapter 6).

- Project and surge design year baggage demand for each screening zone (as discussed in Chapter 6). Additional details about surging are provided in the following paragraphs of this section.

- Select system type and EDS equipment (a list of systems types, including EDS equipment types and their throughputs, is provided in Chapter 5).
Equipment requirements should not be based on average baggage flows, but rather on surged flows obtained by multiplying the average baggage flow by a zone-specific surge factor* (for each 10-minute bin). The use of a surge factor is recommended to capture the intrinsic variance of baggage demand and ensure that equipment requirements are not undersized. The following formula is used to calculate the surge factor:

\[ SF = \frac{x + 2\sqrt{x}}{x}, \text{ where } SF \text{ is the surge factor and } x \text{ is the 10-minute baggage flow.} \]

Figure 7-1 shows the 10-minute baggage flow by airline for an example airport; the surged flow is shown by the red dashed line. Each airline is represented by a different color in this figure.

To calculate EDS equipment requirements, the surged peak 10-minute design year baggage flow is first converted to surged peak-hour design year baggage flow and then divided by the appropriate hourly EDS machine throughput.

For instance, the peak 10-minute flow shown on Figure 7-1 is 198 bags per 10-minutes. The surged factor applied to this flow is approximately 1.14, yielding a surged flow of 224 bags per 10-minutes or 1,357 BPH. To calculate EDS equipment requirements for a medium-volume in-line CBIS using L-3 3DX 6600 equipment at a throughput of 550 BPH (assuming domestic bags), 1,357 BPH would be divided by 550 BPH to get 2.47. Rounding up to the nearest EDS machine implies that a CBIS with 3 EDS machines is necessary, without considering redundancy (as discussed later in this chapter).

As screening systems are sized using the ADPM, there will be instances when screening demand exceeds capacity over the course of the year. Depending on the duration of the over-capacity conditions, specific contingency measures should be implemented, as described in Chapter 8. A mutually agreed upon contingency plan shall be developed by planners in collaboration with stakeholders, including airline representatives, key airport personnel, the local TSA Federal Security Director (FSD), and representatives of TSA headquarters.

---

*To account for random variability in the expected average flow rate, a surge factor derived from an assumed Poisson arrival process distribution is applied to the peak 10-minute baggage flow. The surge factor formula was calibrated to the 10-minute/95th percentile performance criteria (see Chapter 4) by comparing the results to those obtained using discrete-event simulation models. The surged peak 10-minute rate is then normalized to an hourly equivalent load to obtain a design hour flow rate.
7.1.2 EDS Equipment Redundancy

Estimating EDS equipment requirements based on surged peak-hour baggage flow will provide adequate capacity during normal operating conditions. However, EDS equipment cannot be assumed to be 100% reliable. Given the central role of EDS as the primary screening technology for checked baggage inspection, redundancy must be provided to account for the possibility that EDS equipment will be inoperable during certain peak periods.

If possible, redundancy should be achieved through directing baggage to another CBIS using cross-over conveyors, assuming that demand profiles of the screening matrices are not such that their peaks occur simultaneously. The cost of implementing such redundancy measures should be evaluated and compared to costs of other redundancy measures (e.g., providing additional screening equipment).

When spatial constraints make cross-over conveyors between separate screening matrices cost-prohibitive, EDS equipment redundancy should be calculated based
on an assessment of the number of machines necessary to maintain 99% availability of the design capacity.

The multi-year average of the availability of EDS machines installed in-field is approximately 98%, as reported by TSA*. In other words, throughout the year, any current EDS machine was operational 98% of the time.

Based on the 99% availability goal and given an individual machine availability of 98%, only one additional EDS machine is required for systems with less than seven EDS machines. For systems with seven or more EDS machines,** two additional EDS machines would be required to reach that availability goal:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{If } N < 7 &= N + 1 \\
\text{If } N \geq 7 &= N + 2
\end{align*}
\]

Where N is the number of EDS machines, calculated by dividing the surged peak-hour design year ADPM baggage demand by the hourly EDS machine throughout.

For the purpose of calculating EDS throughput, a weighted average of the ranges provided in Tables 5-1 through 5-6 should be used (this weighting should be done according to the mix of domestic and international bags in the zone for which the EDS equipment is being considered).

Redundant equipment shall only be provided when no other lower cost redundancies are possible. For instance, for decentralized systems (such as mini in-line or stand-alone systems), redundancy can be provided through the use of other nearby systems. It is expected that redundant equipment will only be cost-effective for high-volume and medium-volume systems, where (1) machine downtime can have a significant effect on system performance due to the high throughput of each machine and (2) opportunities for diverting bags to another screening area are cost prohibitive.

### 7.1.3 OSR Station Requirements

As explained in Chapter 5, for certain system types, OSR can be centralized and remotely located; while, for other system types, OSR and ETD screening functions can be combined and performed by the same ETD screener.

The degree of centralization can also vary from totally centralized OSR systems that serve the entire airport to OSR systems dedicated to each CBIS. If the system type

---

*Availability is based on annual data collected in-field from TSA-certified EDS screening equipment (CTX-2500, CTX-5500, CTX-9000, and 3DX 6000).

**Theoretically, for systems with 20 or more EDS machines, 3 additional EDS machines are required to guarantee 99% system availability. However, even for highly centralized systems, the maximum number of EDS machines is likely to be less than 12.
supports a remotely located OSR system, several considerations should guide the selection of the appropriate degree of centralization for the system, including TSA staffing, space requirements, and IT infrastructure requirements.

Thus, to select the best OSR system, it is recommended that OSR options be evaluated by assessing OSR staffing needs, capital costs of IT infrastructure and building modifications, and O&M costs.

OSR system requirements shall be derived based on the non-redundant EDS capacity sized to meet baggage demand in the design year. The following key inputs are necessary to estimate OSR station requirements for remotely located OSR systems:

- Total sum of redundant EDS capacity (throughput) for all EDS machines connected to the remote OSR system (Sum of Throughput\textsubscript{EDS}).
- EDS false alarm rate for the EDS equipment selected (FA\textsubscript{EDS}) (see Chapter 5).
- Average OSR screening processing time, from which it is possible to derive the average OSR throughput (Throughput\textsubscript{OSR}) (see Chapter 5).

The number of OSR stations required is:

\[
N_{\text{OSR}} = \frac{\text{Sum of Throughput}_{\text{EDS}} \times \text{FA}_{\text{EDS}}}{\text{Throughput}_{\text{OSR}}}
\]

Continuing the example earlier in this section, a CBIS with 3 L-3 3DX 6600 EDS machines would need a total of 2 OSR stations \[(3 \text{ machines} \times 550 \text{ BPH} \times 13\%)/(180 \text{ bag images per hour}) = 1.19 \text{ operators, rounded up to 2 stations}\].

The false alarm rate shown in the above example is notional and used for illustrative purposes only. Official planning values for EDS false alarm rates are considered Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain this information. For the purposes of calculating the EDS false alarm rate for OSR station requirements, a weighted average of the ranges provided in Tables 5-1 through 5-5 should be used (this weighting should be done according to the mix of domestic and international bags in the zone for which the EDS equipment is being considered).

### 7.1.4 ETD Screening Station Requirements

ETD screening stations are accommodated in CBRAs. In general, an ETD machine is shared between two screeners because the amount of time the ETD machine is used during the total screening process for a bag is relatively short. Thus, the ratio of ETD screening stations to ETD equipment is assumed to be 2 to 1.

As mentioned above, for certain system types, OSR can be centralized and remotely located, while, in other cases, OSR and ETD screening functions can be combined and performed by the same ETD screener.
The following key inputs are necessary to estimate ETD screening station requirements:

- Total sum of redundant EDS capacity (throughput) for all EDS machines connected to the CBRA (Sum of Throughput$_{EDS}$).
- EDS false alarm rate for the EDS equipment selected (FA$_{EDS}$) (see Chapter 5).
- OSR clear rate (CR$_{OSR}$) (see Chapter 5).
- Average ETD screening time per screener, from which it is possible to derive the average ETD throughput per screener (Throughput$_{ETD}$) (if OSR is remote) (see Chapter 5).
- Average combined OSR/ETD screening time per screener, from which it is possible to derive the average OSR/ETD throughput (Throughput$_{OSR/ETD}$) (if OSR and ETD screening functions are combined) (see Chapter 5).

Depending on the selected OSR option, ETD screening station requirements are derived as follows:

- **Remote OSR**
  \[
  N_{ETD \text{ Station}} = \frac{\text{Sum of Throughput}_{EDS} \times \text{FA}_{EDS} \times (1-\text{CR}_{OSR})}{\text{Throughput}_{ETD \text{ Screener}}}
  \]

- **Combined OSR and ETD screening**
  \[
  N_{ETD \text{ Station}} = \frac{\text{Sum of Throughput}_{EDS} \times \text{FA}_{EDS}}{\text{Throughput}_{OSR/ETD \text{ Screener}}}
  \]

where $N_{ETD \text{ Station}}$ represents the minimum number of ETD stations required to screen the design year ADPM baggage screening demand.

The number of ETD machines required is calculated as:

\[
N_{ETD \text{ Machines}} = \frac{N_{ETD \text{ Screeners}}}{2} \text{ rounded up to the next ETD}
\]

Continuing the example earlier in this section, a CBIS with 3 L-3 3DX 6600 EDS machines would need a total of 7 ETD stations \[(3 \text{ machines} \times 550 \text{ BPH} \times 13\% \times 40\%)/(24.2 \text{ bags per hour}) = 3.54 \text{ operators, rounded up to 4 stations}\]. The total number of ETD machines provided would be 2 \((4/2 = 4)\).

Note: In determining throughput rates for combined OSR/ETD and for Directed Search using ETD, it was assumed that each screener has a dedicated viewing station. The false alarm rate shown in the above example is notional and used for illustrative purposes only. Official planning values for EDS false alarm rates are considered Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain this information. For the purposes of calculating the EDS false alarm rate for OSR station requirements, a weighted average of the ranges provided in Tables 5-1 through 5-5 should be used (this weighting should be done according to the mix of
domestic and international bags in the zone for which the EDS equipment is being considered).

7.2 EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS DURING THE SCHEMATIC AND DETAILED DESIGN PHASES

As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, during the Pre-Design phase, several conceptual screening alternatives should be evaluated in terms of life-cycle costs. Thus, the methodology used during this phase is designed to provide quick estimates of EDS, OSR, and ETD screening requirements for each alternative concept. As explained in previous paragraphs, this methodology is based on baggage flow estimates and assumptions on average throughputs and false alarm rates.

Once the number of feasible alternatives is reduced and the feasible alternatives are compared based on the life-cycle cost methodologies described in Chapter 9, detailed simulation modeling is required to further evaluate the alternatives, refine equipment requirements, and evaluate system performance. Simulation modeling helps planners, architects, and CBIS designers move from high-level concepts to a more detailed design.

At the Schematic Design level, high-level flow-based modeling is still allowable to determine average time in system, refined equipment and staffing requirements. For complicated system designs, non-visual simulation modeling may prove beneficial and can be performed at the project sponsor’s discretion.

At the Detailed Design level, once the preferred screening system has been identified, visual simulation is required to (1) finalize the baggage handling and screening system detailed components (e.g., number of queuing belts, conveyor speeds, exact location of merge and diversion points, exact amount of buffering required), (2) assist baggage designers with PLC specifications and requirements, (3) refine the system performance evaluation, and (4) visualize the final design to assist with stakeholder review and approval.

Commercially available simulation packages, as well as proprietary packages, can be used for the Detailed Design phase.

Figure 7-2 summarizes the key elements of each phase and the analytical modeling approach used to assess requirements.
7.3 RECOMMENDED SIMULATION STANDARDS

When developing CBIS simulations, it is recommended that the following standards be used to verify the performance of CBIS designs and to ensure standardization of simulation development. Using commonly accepted standards during simulation development will enable more efficient utilization of simulation results and help implement better screening solutions.
7.3.1 General Standards
The following standards and methodology should be used for any simulation being developed:

- Begin with a layout of the system, including accurate conveyor lengths, equipment used, and belt speeds.
- Program system control logic, including transfers, merges, belt speeds, and bag spacing designed for the EDS equipment being used.
- Use airline passenger lists that can be generated from flight schedules with earliness distributions applied to the flight schedule to determine input into the simulation model for the specific airport. Designers shall list all data and assumptions used in the simulation model, such as arrival curves and growth factors.
- For systems using laser scanners, assume a no-read or misread rate of 8.0%. For systems using radio frequency identification (RFID) scanners, assume a no-read or misread rate of 1.5%.
- Identify potential locations for jams throughout the system and program in an overall 0.5% jam rate to occur randomly at the identified locations.

7.3.2 Statistical Distributions
Whenever possible, planners should obtain specific and updated ETD and OSR processing distributions from TSA. However, if these distributions are not available, the following distributions can be used:

- **Time to clear bag jams** – Use a triangular probability distribution to simulate clearing of jams with a minimum time value of 0.5 minute, most likely time value of 1.5 minutes, and maximum time value of 5.0 minutes.
- **OSR protocol for EDS alarmed bags** – Use a Gamma distribution where the mean is 30.0 seconds, the standard deviation is 7.5 seconds, the minimum value is 5.0 seconds and the maximum value is 45.0 seconds.
- **ETD protocol for oversized bags** – Use a Gamma distribution. Distribution parameters are considered Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain information.
- **ETD Directed Search of EDS alarmed bag** – Use a Gamma distribution. Distribution parameters are considered Sensitive Security Information. Please contact TSA to obtain information.
- If possible, baggage size (length, width, and height) should be distributed based on data collection at the airport or data provided by the airport or
airlines. When actual data are unavailable, the following conservative distribution of baggage size is recommended:

- 35% of baggage is of medium size, with the following average dimensions: 24 inches x 24 inches x 12 inches (width x length x height).

- 61% of baggage is of large size, with the following average dimensions: 24 inches x 36 inches x 18 inches (width x length x height).

- 4% of baggage is long or very large (e.g., golf bags) with the following dimensions: 24 inches x 54 inches x 24 inches (width x length x height).
Chapter 8
CONTINGENCIES

This chapter summarizes the contingency planning process, contingency plan development, and an evaluation of contingency alternatives. Appendix E provides a sample contingency plan, showing how contingency design principles are applied during the CBIS design process.

8.1 CONTINGENCY PLANNING PROCESS

Design of any CBIS shall include contingency plans for instances when baggage demand exceeds CBIS capacity, whether as the result of the failure of CBIS components or peak baggage flow that exceeds the maximum capacity of the CBIS, and for instances where alarm bags at the CBRA are defined as suspect bags (i.e., they cannot be cleared using directed search with ETD) and would need to be placed in the threat containment unit (TCU) for further inspection by law enforcement officer (typically from a bomb disposal squad).

CBIS design teams and other stakeholders, such as airports, airlines, TSA FSD, TSA headquarters, and all other relevant federal, state, and local authorities, shall mutually develop a set of agreeable mitigation measures within a comprehensive contingency plan during the design process. Design criteria associated with rapid recovery from a critical failure within the CBIS should be established within a range of technological and procedural solutions applicable at the individual screening zone level.

The initial contingency plan shall be reviewed by the full ILDT and included as an attachment to the Basis of Design Report. The contingency plan shall be reviewed by TSA as part of the overall design review and approval process for that CBIS design.

8.2 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

When developing a contingency plan, the CBIS design team should consider the following:

- Roles and responsibilities of the various stakeholders regarding system operation during all contingency scenarios (e.g., approval of various mitigation methods and approving entities).

- Overall processing capacity of the CBIS and expected occurrences of baggage flow demand exceeding CBIS capacity (e.g., during known peaks of the year that may exceed the ADPM flow).
• Set of eligible mitigation methods as approved by TSA and applicable for the particular CBIS design (taking into account relevant spatial and operational constraints at the particular airport).

• Maintenance of baggage screening and conveyance operations during critical EDS failures and/or mission critical components of the BHS within the context of the screening system automation continuum and the wide variation in associated costs, both capital and operational. Contingency planning should address critical failures along a continuum that ranges from the installation of additional automation to baggage screening mitigation processes. The trade-off between capital investment and O&M costs should be analyzed in detail.

• Other contingency plans that may affect checked baggage, such as Airport Operations Emergency Response Plan, local standard operating procedures (SOP) for transportation security incidents, Airport Emergency/Incident Response Plan, and Airport Emergency/Incident Recovery Plan.

• Temporary alternative screening location for baggage. If CBRAs are to be used for alternative screening, they should be sized to accommodate the temporary alternative screening operations.

• Threat evacuation and associated impact on baggage screening.

• Natural disaster impact on the screening operation.

8.3 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS TO FACILITATE CONTINGENCY PLANNING

Contingency plans should be customized to the specific CBIS design and terminal constraints. Several design features can be incorporated to provide for improved operation during failure events.

8.3.1 Out-of-Gauge Diverter—Bypass to ETD

The CBIS should be configured with a BMA that will identify baggage with dimensional characteristics (height, width, or length) that the screening equipment does not have the capability to accommodate. OOG baggage should be automatically diverted to ETD for manual screening. In the event that conveying or screening equipment failures occur down-line of the OOG divert, the EDS machine should be programmed to operate in a “limited operation” mode in which all baggage is conveyed via the OOG diverter directly to ETD for manual screening. This conveyor line requires access to standby power to function during power outages.

8.3.2 Equipment Redundancy

Redundancy can be applied to the design of CBIS to minimize single points of failure that can severely limit the operation of the conveying system. Some level of
redundancy is critical for larger capacity systems when the nearest alternate conveying system for the rerouting of baggage is prohibitively remote or nonexistent. The higher capacity system design templates discussed in this document include the provision of increased redundancy.

However, the increased cost and area requirements associated with providing the additional conveying equipment necessary for redundancy must be balanced with the potential savings of labor and time that will result during periods of equipment failure. While CBIS designers should be concerned with minimizing single points of failure, the complete elimination of all single points of failure is likely to be cost prohibitive and provide minimal additional reliability. Designers must take care to provide an appropriate level of redundancy based on a proper assessment of the operational and economic implications of various failure scenarios.

8.3.3 Programming Logic

In the event that one or more EDS machines (depending on the size of the CBIS) experience equipment failure, the system should be programmed so that a certain percentage of bags can be diverted directly to ETD to avoid excessive dieback situations (where baggage is being gradually accumulated back to the take-away belts and the check-in ticket counters) and maintain throughput volumes during peak periods. The percentage of diverted bags depends on the overall processing capacity of the working EDS machines. When the BHS is able to monitor the bag input rate into the screening zone and ascertain that the maximum input rate does not exceed overall screening system capacity, bags can be diverted to the operational EDS machine(s). Designers should program the system to divert baggage as required to maintain throughput and avoid dieback.

8.3.4 Provision for Manual Conveyance of Baggage

CBIS design should allow for a clear, securable path for manual conveyance of baggage to the manual screening area. Designs should provide for manual conveyance of bags from the ticket lobby to the screening area. As much as possible, designs should make use of dedicated conveyors (preferably with access to standby power), such as crossover conveyors and OOG conveyors. CBIS analysis and design must account for the likelihood of increased staffing levels (and the associated labor expense) necessary to maintain a system that lacks mechanical mitigation measures to accommodate equipment failures.

8.3.5 Emergency and Standby Power

If there is no access to standby power for manual screening (using ETD), baggage cannot be processed using conventional ETD screening protocols. The design team should consider, at a minimum, the provision of standby or emergency power to support full manual screening using ETD.
8.4 ALTERNATIVE TSA SCREENING MEASURES

While the design recommendations above can be used to reduce the operational and security impact of equipment failures, certain long-duration failures or failures that occur during peak periods may necessitate the application of alternative TSA screening measures. Planners should consult with TSA regarding the use of mutually agreeable alternative screening measures and document how such measures would be implemented if used as part of the contingency plan.

8.5 FAILURE TYPES AND MITIGATION MEASURES

This section describes baggage handling and screening equipment failures along with examples of potential mitigation strategies that could be used based on the duration of the failure.

Two principal factors cause the failure of CBIS—power failures produced by external events and conveying and/or screening equipment failures. For the purposes of contingency planning, the cause of a failure is of less importance than its duration. Failures can be classified based on their duration or based on the recovery period during peak times or non-peak times.

Mitigation measures are used to overcome various CBIS failures by the application of mechanical and/or manual methods (for example additional conveyers to allow appropriate transfer of baggage or backup power sources for BHS sections). In addition, as a last resort, alternative screening measures can be used with TSA approval to mitigate CBIS failures.

8.5.1 Short-Duration Failures

Short-duration failures (also referred to as non-critical failures) are failures lasting less than 10 minutes. Typically, during this class of failure, a CBIS cannot perform its function, but the failure can be cured without maintenance personnel being called. In the event of short-duration failures, airport and TSA protocols generally follow the logic that the CBIS will be returned to operation quickly.

Typical mitigation measures for short-duration failures include the following:

- **Freeze Situation until System Restarts.** In the event that the system could restart momentarily, cleared bags may remain in place, alarmed bags may remain in place (if the alarm status is positively maintained), and bags with unknown status are manually conveyed to the CBRA. Unscreened baggage would remain in place within the system. Checked baggage would be held for induction into the CBIS until after the system restarts.

- **Manual Conveyance.** In the event of uncertainty regarding short term re-start or when freezing the situation is not an option (e.g., if the failure occurs in the middle of a peak period), cleared bags may be manually conveyed to bag make-up. Alarmed bags, as well as bags with unknown
status, are manually conveyed to the CBRA. Unscreened baggage would remain in place within the system. Checked baggage would be held for induction into the CBIS until after the system restarts.

### 8.5.2 Medium-Duration Failures

Medium-duration failures (also known as critical failures) are failures lasting longer than 10 minutes, but less than 2 hours. Typically, during this class of failure, critical components of a CBIS stop performing their function and maintenance personnel are necessary to fix these failed components. In the event of medium-duration failures, airport and TSA protocols will vary, depending on the availability of power.

Typical mitigation measures for medium-duration failures include the following:

- **Manual Conveyance.** When the BHS is not operational, cleared baggage is manually conveyed to bag make-up. Unscreened baggage, alarmed baggage, and baggage with unknown status is sent to another EDS machine in a separate CBIS (if possible) or manually conveyed to an area designated by TSA for manual and/or alternative screening.

- **Use of Dedicated Conveyors with Standby Power.** If a limited-operation conveyance system exists, it can be used to convey baggage to the CBRA and/or another area designated by TSA for manual screening (e.g., OOG conveyor(s) and oversize conveyor(s)). When the limited operation conveyor system is available (temporary power-loss for entire BHS, but limited system can run using a standby power source), cleared baggage will stay within the system (until system restart) or may be conveyed to bag make-up. Alarmed or unknown baggage may be conveyed to another EDS machine within a separate CBIS (if possible) or the CBRA. Unscreened baggage is conveyed to another EDS machine in a separate CBIS (if possible) or to an area designated by TSA for manual and/or alternative screening.

### 8.5.3 Long-Duration Failures

Long-duration failures (also referred to as catastrophic failures) are failures lasting longer than 2 hours. Typically, during this class of failure, the entire CBIS is inoperable due to power outages or major failures of critical components for an extended duration. Catastrophic failures may follow the same protocols described above for medium-duration failures. Alternate TSA screening protocols may be applied, as specified in the approved contingency plan.

Typically mitigation measures for long-duration failures are similar to those for medium-duration failures. If it is the policy of CBIS stakeholders that the airport operates during extended-duration power outages, then the design team should include in its design the provision of a limited operation conveyance system(s) with access to standby power. Power failures may also be mitigated by the use of standby power with the capacity to enable operation of the entire CBIS.
8.6 EVALUATION OF CONTINGENCY ALTERNATIVES

When evaluating mitigation measures, planners and designers should consider a broad continuum of solutions. Common critical failures of system components (e.g., EDS unit, vertical sorter, optical scanner) within the CBIS should be analyzed to inform the selection of appropriate contingency measures. Catastrophic failures, which may involve total system failures of any duration or a component failure of long duration, should also be considered.

8.6.1 General Principles for Evaluation

The tradeoffs between providing for mechanical versus manual mitigation measures should be based on the complexity of the screening systems and the demand placed on that system. For smaller screening matrices, manual conveyance of bags to another nearby screening system or to a TSA-designated screening area for manual and/or alternative screening processes is likely to be the most cost-effective option. For larger screening systems, mechanical measures are likely to be necessary to handle the high baggage volumes processed by the system. The exact measures implemented should be evaluated based on both operational and economic (life-cycle cost) considerations. In each case, the mutually developed and approved contingency plan shall list the range of mitigation measures and the conditions that trigger those measures.

8.6.2 Mini In-Line System Example

As an example of the tradeoffs and options that should be evaluated, consider a mini in-line system with two EDS machines. Critical failure of either EDS unit or the BHS may be dealt with by relatively low-cost manual processes. The failure of a single EDS machine, however, could be mitigated by manually carrying bags to the in-feed belt serving the remaining operational EDS machine. Additionally, unscreened bags may be sent directly to the CBRA via the OOG belt. In this manner, bags are screened by ETD, with the possibility that some level of mitigation may be applied.

Alternatively, the design and operation of the two EDS-unit system could incorporate an automated feature to convey bags to a single EDS machine in the event of a critical failure of the other EDS machine. Such a feature could be included by adding a dedicated cross-over conveyor line. In this type of application, unscreened bags are diverted away from the inoperable EDS machine and merge into the input line for the remaining EDS machine. During peak periods, a logjam could result if sufficient storage capacity is not provided by the CBIS. Depending on the baggage flow for the system, the marginal costs associated with this type of failure recovery mechanism may be high relative to the marginal benefits of the solution.

In the event that both EDS machines experience medium-duration failures simultaneously, diverting bags to the CBRA would be the most effective option. A long-duration failure of the entire CBIS would require yet another mitigation process, such as increasing the number of ETD screenings and the number of screening personnel in the lobby or bag rooms prior to bag make-up for individual flights.
Chapter 9

DEVELOPMENT AND EVALUATION OF ALTERNATIVES

Several elements of the planning process are presented together in this chapter, enabling planners to develop and evaluate alternatives of the various screening solutions for a particular airport or terminal. As discussed in previous chapters, planners should develop optimally scaled screening alternatives, taking into account the following:

- **Demand Data**—Factors affecting checked baggage flow (see Chapter 6).
- **CBIS Capacity Data**—Data related to the supply of security screening resources (see Chapters 5 and 7).
- **Airport Spatial Data**—Terminal configurations, airline assignments, and architectural constraints (see Chapter 6).
- **Airport Capacity Data**—Existing infrastructure capacities that affect current and future checked baggage flows into the CBIS, including ticket counter and curbside check-in positions, numbers of gates, and runway capacities.
- **Cost Data**—Equipment, infrastructure, O&M, and staffing costs (see Chapter 5 as well as the following paragraphs in this chapter).

Planners are encouraged to develop various alternatives based on the specific conditions of the airport. Spatially and operationally feasible alternatives should be evaluated on the basis of a 20-year life-cycle cost analysis for implementing, maintaining, and replacing the screening systems. The lowest-cost alternative(s) that provide adequate screening solutions for the particular airport or terminal in question shall be selected as the preferred screening alternative(s).

The methodology for developing alternatives, assumptions for assessing the cost effectiveness of the alternatives, and the evaluation process for selecting the preferred alternative(s) at the Pre-Design phase of the planning process are discussed in this chapter.

9.1 DEVELOPING ALTERNATIVES

The screening alternatives should be developed based on the airline groupings (screening zones), as defined in Chapter 6, and the system types, as defined in Chapter 5. In addition, planners should assess the tradeoffs between upfront capacity and incremental capacity at an airport.
9.1.1 Airline Grouping Assignments (Screening Zones)

As discussed in Chapter 5, checked baggage screening systems can be designed to combine baggage flows from several airlines into a single screening system. When defining the set of screening alternatives, planners should compare screening solutions for different combinations of baggage flows. At least two different combinations of baggage flows should be analyzed to provide a meaningful comparison (e.g., centralized zones vs. airline-specific zones).

9.1.2 Tradeoffs between Screening Systems

Several screening system types could serve demand in each screening zone. The system types defined in Chapter 5 provide different tradeoffs between upfront capital costs and recurring staffing and O&M costs, as illustrated on Figure 9-1 and summarized below:

- **System Type 1: High-Volume In-Line CBIS.** High-volume in-line systems are likely to be used in centralized screening zones with one or more airlines. As such, they are generally the most efficient from a machine and staff utilization perspective. However, the centralized nature of these systems may require additional sortation systems, more complex conveyor arrangements, and extensive building modifications; therefore, upfront capital investment and O&M costs are high. These systems are based on high-volume EDS machines (see Chapter 5, Table 5-1) and may contain extensive buffering space and sections of conveyor allowing for sufficient OSR time.
• **System Type 2: Medium-Volume In-Line CBIS.** Similar to high-volume in-line systems, medium-volume in-line systems are likely to be used in centralized screening zones with one or more airlines. Therefore, they also tend to be efficient from a machine and staff utilization perspective. In addition, the lower machine throughput would typically require less complex conveyor arrangements and fewer building modifications. The required upfront capital investment is likely to be lower than for high-volume systems. O&M costs are also typically lower than those for high-volume systems. However, labor costs are typically higher compared with high-volume systems because the medium-volume systems are expected to be less centralized. These systems are based on medium-volume EDS machines (see Chapter 5, Table 5-2) and may contain moderate buffering space and conveyors allowing for sufficient OSR time.

• **System Type 3: Mini In-Line CBIS.** Mini in-line systems are decentralized systems that incorporate a simpler conveyor design and require a smaller footprint. These systems are likely to be located closer to airline ticket counters and/or make-up devices. Travel times are, therefore, reduced, as is the likelihood of improper baggage sortation. However, staff and equipment utilization in a mini in-line system is typically lower than for high-volume or medium-volume systems given the lower demand placed on the system and more peaked load requirements. As a result of lower facility and conveyor modification impacts, capital and O&M costs are expected to be lower for mini in-line systems than for System Types 1 and 2 (See Chapter 5, Table 5-3).

• **System Type 4: Stand-Alone EDS.** For facilities with very low throughput requirements or where architectural conditions may render other systems cost prohibitive, a solution based on a stand-alone EDS machine (e.g., Reveal CT-80, GE CTX-5500, or GE CTX-2500) may be the most economical. A conveyor infrastructure is not required and, therefore, no significant incremental increase in airport/airline O&M costs is expected. These systems offer an even lower capital cost on a per unit basis, but are also less efficient in terms of staff and machine utilization than System Type 3 (see Chapter 5, Table 5-4).

• **System Type 5: Stand-Alone ETD Systems.** As discussed in the BSIS Working Group report, ETD systems will only be allowed at Category IV airports or in larger airports for oversized, fragile, or other items that cannot be screened by EDS. ETD solutions are typically deployed in lobbies or bag make-up rooms and are the most labor-intensive solutions. A conveyor infrastructure is not required and, therefore, these systems offer the lowest capital and O&M cost on a per unit basis (see Chapter 5, Table 5-5).

In most cases, centralized screening zones are likely to require a fully automated in-line system (System Type 1 or 2). Smaller in-line systems or mini in-line systems are
typically better suited for more decentralized zones (such as one or more airline bag rooms). Mini in-line systems and stand-alone systems are typically better suited for highly decentralized zones. However, planners should not explicitly assume this relationship and need to select the optimal screening system for a zone based on the particular characteristics of the zone regardless of its level of centralization.

Planners should consider and evaluate as many screening alternatives as possible by assessing spatial, operational, and life-cycle cost considerations. To provide a potential starting point for developing alternatives, TSA has developed an integrated EDS deployment model that evaluates various screening system types at all Category X, I, II, and III airports in the nation, based on the methodologies outlined in this document. The model takes into account high-level spatial and capacity constraints at airport terminals and evaluates system types on the basis of the life-cycle costs. Planners can obtain, through TSA, the model results that pertain to the airport for which they are developing the screening system design.

As discussed below, those alternatives that are spatially and operationally feasible shall be compared based on total life-cycle costs to the airport, airlines, and TSA.

9.1.3 Tradeoffs between Upfront Capacity and Incremental Capacity

As part of the process of developing alternatives, planners should assess the tradeoffs between (1) incurring additional upfront costs to increase design flexibility for accommodating future growth in demand, and (2) accommodating growth based on modifying the initial system incrementally over the 20-year analysis period. This tradeoff analysis may indicate, for instance, that systems at critical airports (such as airline hubs) should be designed with additional space to accommodate future EDS machines.

Airport planners typically assess the capacity of functional components at an airport (e.g., ticket counters, gates, runways) to determine the ultimate capacity of the terminal. The ultimate terminal or airport capacity should be treated as the upper limit for demand estimates for the purposes of CBIS design. For example, if a 20-year demand analysis indicates that additional ticket counters and/or gates and/or runway capacity are required beyond that available in the current terminal or airport, then planners should assume that such requirements are beyond the scope of the CBIS design. Capital-intensive expansions to accommodate additional demand on other airport functional components should also include consideration of additional baggage screening capacity to accommodate future growth of baggage demand beyond the ultimate capacity considered in the CBIS design.

9.2 ESTIMATING LIFE-CYCLE COSTS

The design principles defined in the BSIS Guidelines emphasize the need to define and implement the lowest-cost screening alternative for the particular airport or terminal. To establish the lowest-cost alternative, planners shall calculate the life-cycle costs of developing, maintaining, and replacing the screening systems. These costs will include costs borne by TSA as well as airports and airlines.
The analysis assumptions and life-cycle costs to consider, including capital costs, O&M costs, and staffing costs, are discussed below.

9.2.1 Analysis Assumptions
Assumptions regarding the duration of the analysis period, the EDS and ETD equipment life expectancy, and the duration of construction period are described below.

9.2.1.1 Life-Cycle Cost Analysis Period
To provide a standardized period for assessing life-cycle costs, a 20-year total life-cycle shall be assumed based on DHS guidance to fully capture the upfront capital costs as well as recurring costs for staffing, O&M, and life-cycle replacements. The 20-year analysis period allows planners to account for: (1) screening equipment refurbishment and replacement and (2) accommodating traffic growth beyond the initial equipment design year (DBU + 5 years).

9.2.1.2 Equipment Life-Cycle
Equipment life-cycle assumptions are as follows:

- EDS Equipment. The useful life of the EDS machine is assumed to be 7 years. It is possible to extend the EDS machine’s useful life by 4 additional years with refurbishment options (see specific screening equipment life-cycle assumptions in Chapter 5 and specifically Tables 5-1 through 5-6).

- ETD Equipment. The useful life of an ETD machine is assumed to be 5 years. No refurbishment options are available to extend ETD machine life beyond this period.

9.2.1.3 Construction Period
It is expected that the construction period will be, on average, about 2 years for the high-volume and medium-volume in-line systems and less than 1 year for all other systems (mini in-line and stand-alone). Some stand-alone systems can be installed in an even shorter period. The exact construction period will be airport-specific and depend on the complexity of and contracting requirements for the airport. Therefore, planners should estimate appropriate construction periods for the particular airport in question.

9.2.1.4 Constant Dollar Cost
Cash flows can be expressed in real or nominal dollars. Nominal (or current) values represent the expected price that will be paid when a cost is due to be paid. These values include inflation. For instance, if a machine costs $1.0 million today and is expected to cost $1.1 million in 2008, $1.1 million is the nominal cost of the machine in 2008. Real (or constant) values are adjusted to remove the effect of inflation. In the example above, the real value of the machine is $1.0 million, whether purchased
today or in 2008. Real values are used to provide consistent comparison of costs over time and shall be used to estimate all costs considered in the life-cycle analysis. These costs shall be based on the year in which the analysis is conducted. Therefore, no assumptions regarding cost escalation or inflation are necessary for this analysis.

### 9.2.2 Life-Cycle Costs to Consider

At a minimum, planners should assess the following costs in determining the overall cost of each screening alternative:

- **Capital Costs**
  - Screening equipment purchase price
  - Screening equipment installation costs
  - Screening equipment refurbishment and upgrade costs
  - Screening equipment replacement costs
  - Cost of EDS removal
  - EDS residual value and disposal costs
  - Costs of required building and BHS infrastructure modifications

- **O&M Costs**
  - Screening equipment maintenance costs
  - Screening equipment operating costs
  - Incremental BHS maintenance costs (including additional maintenance personnel)
  - Incremental BHS operating costs

- **Staffing Costs**
  - TSA screener and supervisor costs
  - Incremental staff associated with clearing bag jams or portering bags (if not included in O&M costs described above)

Planners should calculate overall life-cycle costs for all alternatives based (as much as possible) on actual costs. Cost assumptions, averages, and estimates provided in this chapter should serve as a baseline to verify that actual costs are within a reasonable range. Details regarding estimation of the above costs are described in the paragraphs below.

### 9.2.3 Estimating Capital Costs

Capital costs to be considered include screening equipment purchase price, screening equipment installation costs, screening equipment refurbishment and upgrade costs, screening equipment replacement costs, cost of EDS removal, EDS residual value and disposal cost, and costs of required building and BHS modifications.
9.2.3.1 Screening Equipment Purchase Price

The purchase prices of existing technology equipment and assumed purchase prices of future technology should be obtained from TSA. However as a starting point planners can use the following assumed purchase prices of existing and future technology as shown in Table 9-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor and Model</th>
<th>Purchase Price</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic AN XLB</td>
<td>$1,100,000</td>
<td>(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
<td>(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 9400</td>
<td>$1,200,000</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 9800</td>
<td>$1,200,000</td>
<td>(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 10K</td>
<td>$1,300,000</td>
<td>(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>$880,000</td>
<td>(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6600 (formerly AN6400)</td>
<td>$1,100,000</td>
<td>(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-5500 w/ ViewLink</td>
<td>$880,000</td>
<td>(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-2500</td>
<td>$625,000</td>
<td>(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>$285,000</td>
<td>(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-800</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
<td>(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD (various manufacturers)</td>
<td>$40,000</td>
<td>(f)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Actual prices will be determined through negotiations with the vendor and will likely depend upon volume purchased.

(a) As specified in most recent GE contract.
(b) As specified in most recent L-3 contract (Contract number DTSA20-03-D00928). Price does not include networking (NEDS).
(c) Assumed. TSA does not currently have plans to purchase additional units. If TSA purchases additional units, prices will be determined through negotiations with the vendor.
(d) Anticipated cost based on initial pilot testing. Price does not include networking.
(e) Based on design-to-cost estimate, discussions with the Transportation Security Laboratory, and input from EDS vendor.
(f) As observed in TSA equipment databases.

9.2.3.2 Screening Equipment Direct Installation Costs

Direct installation costs relate to the set-up and preparation of equipment for use. The components of direct installation cost are summarized in Table 9-2.
### Table 9-2

**COMPONENTS OF DIRECT INSTALLATION COSTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment</th>
<th>Labor</th>
<th>Logistics</th>
<th>On-Site Installation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary equipment (including hardware &amp; software)</td>
<td>Program management (on-site and HQ), including technical contracts</td>
<td>Warehousing</td>
<td>Site preparation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial spares/repair parts and consumables</td>
<td>Systems engineering personnel</td>
<td>Shipping and handling</td>
<td>Facility modifications (construction) and design (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Initial training</td>
<td>Data (training manuals, maintenance manuals, operations manuals)</td>
<td>Integration and multiplexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Travel</td>
<td>Testing &amp; evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a\) Includes any on-site modifications required to install screening equipment. Does not cover expenses related to baggage handling system design and associated facilities modifications.

Direct installation costs vary significantly between configurations of the same model of EDS machine. For example, an L-3 3DX 6000 installed in a stand-alone configuration will cost significantly less than the same unit installed in a multiplexed arrangement (i.e., electronically linked to other EDS machines). Also a higher installation cost for a mini in-line system using L-3 3DX 6000 equipment should be assumed since there is a capability of the L-3 3DX 6000 EDS to operate at higher throughput rates compared to other mini in-line EDS units (at around 400 BPH) however, to support that a higher installation price should be assumed. Table 9-3 details the installation cost assumptions of each system type.
Table 9-3

DIRECT INSTALLATION COST OF SCREENING EQUIPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System type</th>
<th>Installation cost per machine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High-volume in-line</td>
<td>$425,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-volume in-line</td>
<td>$425,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini in-line</td>
<td>$100,000 – $425,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand-alone EDS</td>
<td>$9,000 – $50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD</td>
<td>$2,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Stand-alone EDS installations utilizing light-weight machines do not require the same floor reinforcement as do installations of heavier stand-alone equipment.

Source: TSA, June 2005.

9.2.3.3 Screening Equipment Refurbishment and Upgrade Costs

Refurbishment extends a machine’s useful life, but does not enhance throughput or other operational capabilities, whereas an upgrade provides extended capabilities. Upgrade and refurbishment assumptions are presented in Table 9-4. Upgrades and refurbishments may take place either in the field, where the equipment is deployed, or at a warehouse or factory prior to redeployment. Some machines could be either upgraded or refurbished or both. For most types of machines, it should be assumed that upgrade and refurbishment options would provide an additional 4 years of useful life. No refurbishment options are available for ETD machines.

Planners should consult with TSA about upgrade and refurbishment options as well as the costs of those options that are available for the screening equipment being considered in the CBIS design for the particular airport.
Table 9-4

**EDS REFURBISHMENT AND UPGRADE OPTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vendor/ Model</th>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Additional Useful Life (Years)</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic / XLB</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic / King Cobra</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$85,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 2500</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$85,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 5500</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 5500</td>
<td>Upgrade to ViewLink</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 5500</td>
<td>Refurbish + Upgrade to ViewLink</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$175,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 9000 / 9400</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 9000 / 9400</td>
<td>Refurbish + Upgrade to CTX 9800</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$550,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 9800</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 9800</td>
<td>Refurbish + Upgrade to CTX 10K</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$250,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE / CTX 10K</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$75,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 / 3DX 6000 (In-line)</td>
<td>Refurbish + Upgrade to 6600</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 / 3DX 6000 (Lobby)</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 / 3DX 6000 (Lobby)</td>
<td>Refurbish + Upgrade to 6600</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 / 3DX 6600</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal / CT-80</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal / CT-80</td>
<td>Refurbish + Upgrade</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal /CT-800</td>
<td>Refurbish</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Refurbish cost is highly dependent on EDS condition at time of refurbishment and level of refurbishment required to extend machine life; actual costs could significantly vary and should be obtained from TSA. Higher throughput machines are expected to be more complex compared to lower throughput machines and therefore have higher refurbish costs. In addition, older generation machines (with older technology for various sub-modules and components) are expected to require higher refurbish costs compared to newer generation machines.

Source: Assumed based on TSA and EDS vendor input, December 2006.
9.2.3.4 **Screening Equipment Replacement Costs**

Whenever it is necessary to replace screening equipment with a new type of screening equipment, it may be necessary to modify the BHS so that it can support the new machine types (if the BHS was not already designed to support the new type of screening equipment). Costs associated with the modification of infrastructure to support EDS machine replacement are presented in Table 9-5.

BHS modification costs can vary significantly among CBIS types. It is highly recommended that actual cost estimates be developed for the specific site and CBIS design rather than using the cost estimates provided herein. These cost estimates are included mainly to provide planners with a rough estimate based mostly on high-level conceptual designs.

Planners should consult with TSA regarding new machine types that should be considered as replacement options. Costs of those replacement options should be assessed by planners based on actual CBIS design and on actual modifications that are required for the BHS to be able to support the new types of EDS screening equipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screening System Type</th>
<th>Infrastructure Modification Cost per EDS Replacement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High-volume in-line</td>
<td>$200,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-volume in-line</td>
<td>$133,333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini in-line (all equipment types)</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand-alone</td>
<td>$0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on input from TSA and EDS vendors, December 2006.

9.2.3.5 **Cost of EDS Removal**

Prior to the replacement of EDS machines, installed EDS equipment must be removed. This removal may result in costs to access equipment in space-constrained installations, disassemble conveyor segments, and temporarily modify surrounding facilities. Planners should estimate EDS removal costs for the specific screening alternatives.

9.2.3.6 **EDS Residual Value and Disposal Cost**

It is assumed that the EDS residual value (at the end of useful life) is equal to the cost of disposal.
9.2.3.7 Costs of Required Building and BHS Modifications

Facility modifications and infrastructure costs represent the majority of the upfront costs associated with implementing an in-line system. Compared with other types of security screening equipment, EDS machines require significant facility design and construction costs because of their size and weight and the need to integrate these machines into the BHS. Examples of facility modification work include:

- Constructing extra baggage make-up rooms to replace existing baggage make-up areas displaced by EDS equipment.
- Constructing CBRAs to provide conditioned workspace for alarm resolution screening (e.g., alarm resolution with OSR and/or ETD).
- Redesigning and upgrading baggage handling system conveyors to support integration with EDS equipment.
- Moving walls, partitions, and any other structural components.
- Reinforcing flooring to support additional weight.
- Upgrading mechanical and electrical systems (and HVAC if required).
- Adding ticket counter and/or curbside check-in positions and/or gates as required to support CBIS.

Since the nature of the work will vary significantly from airport to airport and greatly depends on the type of checked baggage screening system installed, facility modification costs can vary significantly. Planners shall develop a detailed, bottom-up cost estimate for facility modification and infrastructure costs for all alternatives being considered.

Because of their high upfront capital cost and the high degree of cost variability, facility modifications and infrastructure costs represent the highest risk to overall project cost and schedule. Small percentage changes in these costs can significantly affect the life-cycle cost of a project.

For each of the screening system types, Table 9-6 enumerates the assumed average cost of facility modifications and infrastructure per EDS machine. Facility modification costs are adjusted to account for regional differences in construction costs based on the Means Construction Cost Indexes* published by Reed Construction Data. Given the high variability of this cost category, these assumed averages are provided here as a starting point only and should be refined by planners in the life-cycle cost estimation to reflect site-specific conditions.

---

*Reed Construction Data, Means Construction Cost Indexes, Volume 32, Number 1, January 2006.
### Table 9-6

**AVERAGE COST OF FACILITY MODIFICATIONS AND INFRASTRUCTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Type</th>
<th>Average Cost per Machine</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High-volume in-line</td>
<td>$6,000,000</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-volume in-line</td>
<td>$4,000,000</td>
<td>(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini in-line</td>
<td>$325,000 – $1,500,000</td>
<td>(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand-alone EDS</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand-alone ETD</td>
<td>$4,000</td>
<td>(e)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. (a) Bottom-up cost estimate from template baggage handling system designs and adjusted for variation between template designs and actual installations of medium-volume in-line systems.
2. (b) Average of selected existing in-line installations with fully integrated EDS equipment.
3. (c) Facility modification and infrastructure cost per EDS depends on the level of integration with the baggage handling system.
4. (d) Bottom-up cost estimates of template designs and data from existing installations of mini in-line EDS machines.
5. (e) TSA estimates from existing installations including recent installations of reduced size and weight EDS machines at lower facility modification and infrastructure costs due to higher chances of a better fit to existing buildings.

### 9.2.4 Estimating O&M Costs

O&M costs to be considered include screening equipment maintenance costs, screening operating costs, incremental BHS maintenance costs, and incremental BHS operating costs.

#### 9.2.4.1 Screening Equipment Maintenance Costs

Maintenance costs include costs for preventive and corrective maintenance, related program management, moving equipment, replenishment of spares, repair parts, shipping and handling, technical update training, data manuals, other direct expenses, dismantling, and destruction. Since spring 2005, all screening equipment maintenance contracts negotiated by TSA have been on a fixed price per unit basis. Maintenance costs for new technology equipment are assumed to also be on a fixed price per unit basis, equal to 10% of the purchase price.

Consistent with previous contracts, all EDS vendors are responsible for assuming the first year’s maintenance contracts. Typically, the first year’s maintenance cost is included in the equipment purchase price. However, in-warranty maintenance costs for the GE CTX-9000 include an additional fee of $22,642 per machine in the first year for extended hour usage (i.e., operations beyond Monday through Friday, 9 a.m. – 5 p.m.). Table 9-7 shows the maintenance unit cost assumptions based on...
the latest maintenance contracts with TSA as well as assumed maintenance costs for next generation technologies.

Table 9-7
SCREENING EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE COST ASSUMPTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EDS Machine</th>
<th>Cost per Machine</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic AN XLB</td>
<td>$110,000</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-10K</td>
<td>$101,060</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9800</td>
<td>$93,286</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9000 / 9400</td>
<td>$93,286</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-5500</td>
<td>$71,549</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-2500</td>
<td>$61,587</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>$98,161</td>
<td>(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6600</td>
<td>$110,000</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-800</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>$28,500</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Annual maintenance cost estimated based on standard EDS maintenance services provided by EDS manufacturers as reflected in current maintenance contracts with TSA. EDS maintenance costs in the first year covered by OEM warranty plans. After the one-year warranty period has expired, EDS maintenance costs for next generation equipment are assumed to be 10% of the initial purchase price. Purchase cost estimates based on standard pricing provided by EDS manufacturers to TSA. Acquisition costs will vary with quantity purchased and various available options/features selected for EDS.

(b) Actual L-3 unit maintenance costs stated above are higher than those stated in the contract as the one time costs and additional management fees were fully loaded into the fixed price amount. This calculation was performed by TSA acquisitions.

Planners should confirm equipment maintenance cost assumptions with TSA for the specific screening equipment being considered as part of the alternatives under development.

9.2.4.2 Screening Equipment Operating Costs

The largest operating cost driver for screening equipment is the electrical consumption of EDS equipment. Typically, usage per machine can be estimated from equipment specifications and duration of use (which can be estimated based on baggage flow). Table 9-8 provides information regarding the power consumption of screening equipment. Planners should take into account the costs of local electricity (in cents per kilowatt hour) and calculate utility costs of overall screening equipment.
### Table 9-8

**SCREENING EQUIPMENT POWER CONSUMPTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screening Equipment</th>
<th>Kilowatts per Hour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analogic AN XLB</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 10K</td>
<td>9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX 9800</td>
<td>9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9000 / 9400</td>
<td>9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-5500</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-2500</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6600</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-800</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermodetection EGIS II</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smiths Detection IONSCAN 400B</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE Itemizer II</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: TSA and screening equipment manufacturers, December 2006.

### 9.2.4.3 Incremental BHS Maintenance Costs

In addition to EDS machine maintenance costs, costs should also account for BHS maintenance costs directly related to the CBIS. These costs typically include preventive as well as corrective maintenance to all BHS components above and beyond the current BHS maintenance costs.

For the purposes of the life-cycle cost analysis of screening alternatives, only the incremental cost of BHS maintenance shall be considered. To calculate the incremental BHS maintenance cost, planners shall subtract the existing maintenance cost of the current BHS from the total estimated maintenance cost of the BHS with CBIS.

Table 9-9 provides estimated national average costs for incremental annual BHS maintenance. However, planners should obtain accurate maintenance cost assumptions from airport personnel or the BHS operator.
### Table 9-9

#### ESTIMATED ANNUAL INCREMENTAL BHS MAINTENANCE COSTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screening System Type</th>
<th>Incremental BHS Maintenance Cost per EDS Machine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High-volume in-line</td>
<td>$306,351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-volume in-line</td>
<td>$204,234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini in-line (all equipment types)</td>
<td>$33,040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand-alone</td>
<td>$0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Data collected from existing in-line systems, May 2006.

#### 9.2.4.4 Incremental BHS Operating Costs

Planners shall compare utility costs for the BHS on an incremental basis. To calculate the incremental BHS operating cost, planners shall subtract the existing operating cost of the current BHS from the total estimated operating cost of the BHS with CBIS.

#### 9.2.5 Estimating Staffing Costs

Staffing costs consist of TSA screener costs as well as costs for airport/airline baggage porters. In addition, if other airport-specific staff costs are expected, these should be included in staffing or O&M costs as applicable.

#### 9.2.5.1 TSA Screener and Supervisor Costs

TSA will assess staffing costs for TSA screeners and supervisors. Planners shall request staffing estimates for the screening alternative(s) under consideration upon submittal of the Preliminary Alternatives Analysis Report (see Chapter 3). As part of this request, planners must provide TSA with the following:

- Descriptions of the screening zones (including airline groupings)
- Descriptions of the screening system type and equipment for each screening zone assumed in the concept
- Estimated baggage flow for the ADPM in 10-minute bins (or increments)
- Assumed annual growth rate based on the forecast used to determine equipment requirements

TSA will provide estimates of the total screening cost by year for each alternative under consideration.
9.2.5.2 Incremental Costs for Baggage Porters and Other Airport/Airline Staff

Any increase or decrease in costs for baggage porters or other airport/airline staff should be included in the life-cycle cost analysis. Planners shall include only incremental costs.

9.3 SELECTING THE PREFERRED ALTERNATIVE

Alternatives shall be evaluated on the basis of present value total life-cycle costs, defined as the present value of the annual sum of capital, O&M, and staffing costs. Where possible, costs should be split out by stakeholder (e.g., TSA, airport, and airline) for transparency in the evaluation process.

For the purposes of estimating the present value of these costs, a real discount rate of 7% shall be used. This discount rate corresponds to guidance from the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) for projects that accrue costs and/or benefits to governmental and nongovernmental parties. Discounting of life-cycle costs is necessary to ensure that all alternatives are compared on a standardized basis. The discount rate is meant to reflect the time value of money (cash received today is worth more than the same amount of cash received tomorrow because of the opportunity to invest that cash in other projects) and the risk associated with uncertain future cash flows.

The formula below can be used to calculate the present value cost of the screening system alternative.

\[ PV = \frac{C_1}{(1.07)^1} + \frac{C_2}{(1.07)^2} + \ldots + \frac{C_{20}}{(1.07)^{20}} \]

Where \( C_1 \) is the total cost in year 1.

Once the costs of all concept-level alternatives have been developed to include the full present value life-cycle costs, alternatives shall be ranked based on present value life-cycle costs and the lowest cost alternative that meets all other requirements shall be selected as the preferred alternative. Other higher cost alternatives can be carried forward for further development and evaluation in the Schematic Design phase with approval from TSA and the ILDT.
Appendix A

INTRODUCTION TO IN-LINE CHECKED BAGGAGE INSPECTION SYSTEMS

This appendix provides a high-level description of a typical in-line baggage inspection system using EDS units. The appendix includes a description of the way bags are directed to the screening area, the three levels of screening, and finally, the way bags are delivered to the baggage makeup device.
Appendix A

INTRODUCTION TO IN-LINE CHECKED BAGGAGE INSPECTION SYSTEMS

The following provides an introductory description of a typical in-line CBIS, and includes a description of the way bags are directed to the screening area, the three levels of screening, and the way bags are delivered to the baggage sortation system/makeup device.

A.1 OVERVIEW

In an in-line CBIS, screening operations are integrated with the outbound baggage handling system. The screening process occurs between the point where bags are loaded onto induction belts, usually at the airline check-in counters, and the point where they are delivered to the airlines’ outbound sortation or make-up system. The process involves three different screening levels. Level 1 screening is performed with EDS units. All bags that can physically fit in an EDS unit are directed to Level 1 and scanned with EDS. All bags that automatically alarm at Level 1 are subject to Level 2 screening. During Level 2 screening, TSA personnel view alarm bag images captured during the Level 1 EDS scan, and clear any bags whose status can be resolved visually. This process is referred to as on-screen resolution (OSR), which for in-line systems allows the continuous flow of bags through the system until a decision is made. Although OSR typically occurs remotely, it may occur locally at the individual units, but this is not recommended. All bags that cannot be resolved at Level 2, and all bags that cannot be directed to Level 1 due to size restrictions, are sent to Level 3. Level 3 screening is performed manually and involves opening the bag and use of electronic trace detection ETD technology. The small percentage of bags that do not pass Level 3 screening are either resolved or disposed of by a local law enforcement officer. The following paragraphs further describe key elements of an in-line CBIS.

A.2 CONVEYOR INPUTS

Typically, checked bags originate at induction belts located on the public side of the terminal, which deliver bags from ticket counters and curbside check-in facilities to the baggage screening zone, or at international or interline recheck inputs.

Depending on the specific CBIS design, bags typically continue along the mainline conveyors to the screening zone (optionally, bags can continue over several types of load-balancing devices prior to arriving at the screening zone).

Typically, a baggage measurement array (BMA) is used to identify bags that are too large to fit into the EDS unit (defined as out-of-gauge [OOG] bags) for downstream diversion to a separate conveyor transferring the bags directly to Level 3 screening at the Checked Baggage Resolution Area (CBRA also known as Baggage Inspection Room or BIR) to be screened manually using ETD equipment.
A.3 LEVEL 1 – EDS SCREENING ZONE

Unscreened bags are typically sent to EDS conveyor subsystems consisting of queue conveyors in front of each EDS unit. Various methods can be used to configure BHS control logic, which drives load balancing between or among EDS units (round-robin or first-available).

When bags enter the EDS units and are screened, a decision is made by the unit, indicating whether or not the bag has generated an automatic alarm.

Bags cleared by the EDS units typically exit and transport through the Level 1 cleared-bag divert point located at a relatively close point downstream from the EDS unit.

In general, Level 1 EDS-cleared bags represent approximately a significant majority of all screened bags (exact percentages will depend on the type of EDS unit used and the average false alarm rate of that unit). Level 1 EDS-cleared bags exit the screening system fairly quickly, depending on the EDS unit location and the CBIS design.

A.4 LEVEL 2 – ON-SCREEN RESOLUTION ROOM

Bags that generate an automatic alarm by the EDS units are defined as “alarm bags” and typically continue traveling on the same conveyor until they reach a BHS decision point. If a screener decision on an alarm bag has been made by the time the bag arrives at the decision point (based on bag images sent to a remote OSR room), the bag will be diverted accordingly (as a cleared or suspect bag). If no screener decision was made, the bag status would be determined as unknown, treated as a suspect bag, and transported to the Level 3 checked baggage reconciliation/resolution area (CBRA).

During the travel time (or wait time at decision points) of bags pending OSR decision, bag images are sent to viewing stations within a remote screening room where TSA screeners view the images and determine whether the bag is clear or suspect. When a TSA screener makes an OSR decision (typically, taking an average of 30 seconds) or exceeds the maximum time allowed for viewing a bag image (typically, 45 seconds), the status of that bag (suspect or unknown) is communicated to the BHS and the EDS unit and the bag is diverted accordingly (suspicious and unknown bags to the CBRA and cleared bags to the clear bag lines or bag make-up area).

Some portion of all alarm bags viewed by TSA screeners are cleared using the currently approved OSR protocol.

If a bag is mistracked after being screened by the EDS unit, its status becomes unknown (or mistracked) and the bag would typically be diverted to Level 3 inspection at the CBRA and be manually screened, similar to manual screening of OOG or oversize bags.
A.5 LEVEL 3 – MANUAL SCREENING WITH ETD

Bags that are not cleared by OSR screening, unknown/error bags and OOG bags are diverted to the CBRA.

When a bag arrives at the CBRA, its corresponding image is typically retrieved by the TSA screener (the image is transmitted over the EDS network) using the bag identifier (ID). Based on the bag image, the TSA screener identifies and locates the alarm object(s) within the alarm bag and manually clears the object(s) using ETD (referred to as directed trace or manual inspection).

Bags clearing ETD screening are re-inserted onto a cleared bag conveyor and typically merged with the main flow of bags to the bag sortation or make-up area.

Typically, most alarm bags (as well as unknown and OOG bags) at the CBRA are cleared using ETD directed trace.

A.6 ORDINANCE DISPOSAL

The small remainder of alarm bags that are not cleared by manual inspection at the CBRA are resolved or disposed of by a local law enforcement officer (LEO), who is usually a member of the local bomb disposal unit. These bags are loaded into a threat containment unit at the CBRA to be further inspected by an LEO. The vast majority of this small fraction of bags is cleared by the LEO.
Figure A-1

SCHEMATIC FLOW CHART OF AN IN-LINE SCREENING SYSTEM

Source: Jacobs Consultancy, September 2006.
Figure A-2
SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM OF CBIS SCREENING LEVELS

Appendix B

GENERIC EXAMPLES OF CHECKED BAGGAGE INSPECTION SYSTEMS

This appendix provides generic examples of various design concepts of CBISs, relevant operational assumptions for those examples, and specific best practices related to the CBIS examples.
Appendix B

GENERIC EXAMPLES OF CHECKED BAGGAGE INSPECTION SYSTEMS

Generic examples of various design concepts of CBISs, relevant operational assumptions for those examples, and specific best practices related to the CBIS examples are provided in this appendix to supplement the information contained in Chapter 4 and Appendix D1 of the BSIS Guidelines.

The high-level generic examples (i.e., examples that are not highly detailed but rather convey a concept of a screening system) are provided to assist planners at the pre-design stage of CBIS design with the development of conceptual alternatives. The examples are not site-specific and should not be used as-is. These examples are intended to serve as a starting point for planners to provide ideas on different concepts of CBIS, some of the pros and cons of each concept, and some of the best practices that relate to specific CBIS design concepts. When developing design concepts, planners should consider local operational and spatial conditions, which are likely to significantly influence the actual CBIS design concepts developed.

B.1 METHODOLOGY USED FOR DEVELOPING GENERIC EXAMPLES

Most of the following generic CBIS examples were developed and evaluated using high-volume EDS machines as the basis of design (although some were designed for low- and medium-volume EDS machines more suitable for mini in-line CBIS concepts). For most examples, a medium-volume EDS machine can be considered as an alternate to the high-volume EDS machine in applications where anticipated throughput does not justify the need for a high-volume EDS machine. Higher throughput could be accomplished in most cases by a relatively simple substitution of the EDS machines, without otherwise changing the layout of the main EDS processing system (i.e., changing BHS conveyors in the immediate vicinity of the EDS machines, bypass and purge lines, and CBRA conveyors), and without requiring changes to ticketing/curbside belts and bag make-up/sortation conveyors.

In some examples, other minor layout revisions may be required to provide a better match between BHS conveying capacity and EDS design throughput, but these revisions are unlikely to have much effect on BHS capital cost or building area requirements. Planners should consider such modifications when developing specific CBIS design concepts. The substitution of a high-volume EDS machine with a medium-volume EDS machine will likely result in revised values for OSR and ETD screener staffing requirements and for the associated equipment/space requirements for this equipment and personnel.

A useful strategy may be to design a system based initially on the use of medium-volume EDS machines and subsequent replacement by high-volume EDS machines as demand increases. This strategy would provide a convenient method of
achieving a 35% to 40% increase in system throughput capacity without requiring significant revisions to the main EDS and BHS layout (other than EDS machine substitution and additional ticketing and make-up capacity, as required).

The following assumptions were the basis for developing the generic CBIS examples:

- A separate line is used for bags too large to be loaded on the ticketing/curbside belts (e.g., surfboards, skis, and golf clubs).

- Oversize bags represent about 4% of total checked bags. These bags are screened using ETD directed search, at a processing rate of 24.2 bags per hour (bph) per operator.

- A bypass belt is used (except in low capacity applications) to divert bags that will not fit the aperture dimensions of the EDS tunnel. The diverter directs out-of-gauge (OOG) bags directly to the CBRA, bypassing the EDS machines.

- A purge line is used in some examples to allow for the routing of bags to be automatically reintroduced into the main line feeding the EDS lines in the event of an individual EDS machine failure when necessary (see detailed discussion in Chapter 4 and Appendix D1).

- A minimum of 45 seconds is provided after the bag has been screened by an EDS machine for OSR processing in High Volume and Medium Volume CBIS designs.

- The ETD/directed search processing rate was assumed to be 24.2 bph per operator (average).

**B.2 GENERIC EXAMPLES OF LINEAR CBIS DESIGN CONCEPTS**

Linear CBIS design concepts typically have a relatively straight forward linear conveyor system transporting baggage from ticket counter take-away belts to the screening zones and from the screening zones to the CBRA zone(s) and bag make-up device(s).

Five variations of linear CBIS design concepts are described below:

- **Linear CBIS Design Concept A1**—Baggage is transferred from ticket counters on a single conveyor to EDS, and vertical sorters or 45-degree diverters separate clear/alarm bags soon after the bags exit the EDS machines.

- **Linear CBIS Design Concept A2**—Similar to design concept A1, but baggage exits the EDS machines and are merged onto a single accumulation
conveyor, pending OSR decision (i.e., alarm baggage and clear baggage are commingled).

- **Linear CBIS Design Concept B1**—Similar to design concept A1, but intended to handle higher volume of bags transferred from the induction lines.

- **Linear CBIS Design Concept B2**—Similar to design concept B1, but provides higher capacity as well as fallback redundancy with dual induction conveyors and dual conveyors leading from the screening zone to the bag make-up area.

- **Linear CBIS Design Concept F3**—Similar to design concept B2, but provides even higher capacity and greater fallback redundancy with triple induction conveyors and triple conveyors leading from the screening zone to the bag make-up area.
B.2.1 Example of a Linear CBIS Design Concept A1

A conceptual layout for concept A1 is shown on Figure B-1 below.

![Figure B-1: Concept A1](image)
**Description of Linear CBIS Design Concept A1.** This design concept includes two ticket counter zones and one curbside check in zone. Bags are merged into a single main line conveyor belt leading to the security screening and bag make-up area. A baggage measurement array (BMA) is used to identify OOG bags that exceed the available cross-sectional area that can be accommodated by the EDS machines. OOG bags are diverted to a conveyor leading directly to the CBRA for manual inspection and clearance. All other bags proceed to a diverter that divides bag flow between the two EDS machines. After screening by EDS equipment, bags proceed to a vertisorter (a 45 degree diverter with parallel conveyors could also be configured) where alarmed bags are diverted to an accumulation conveyor, pending OSR inspection by TSA personnel.

Bags cleared by the EDS machines are immediately segregated from alarmed bags and proceed directly to a single main line delivery conveyor leading to the make-up area. There is a subsequent merge point for bags cleared by OSR or ETD. Upon reaching the end of the OSR accumulation conveyor, bags that have been cleared by TSA personnel are diverted (vertisorter or 45 degree diverter) to a cleared bag belt, which, in turn, merges with the main line delivery conveyor leading to the make-up area, as described above. Bags that are not cleared by TSA personnel (including bags for which no clearance decision has been reached by the time the bag reaches the decision point) will default to the CBRA for manual inspection.

Positive bag tracking controls are used to monitor the location of all bags processed by the EDS machines and to enable images of screened bags sent to the CBRA to be accessed by TSA screening/search personnel. EDS images are sent to the corresponding ETD inspection position to assist with directed ETD screening of the bag. Bags that are cleared after ETD screening/search are loaded onto a return conveyor, which merges with the main line delivery conveyor leading to the bag make up area. Any “threat” bags identified during the ETD screening/search process are loaded to a threat containment unit (TCU) for removal to a secure area for processing or are handled according to other procedures defined by local law enforcement.

**Evaluation of Linear CBIS Design Concept A1.** This design concept is well suited for a moderate-sized application. However, the concept may involve a high cost for EDS machines because a backup machine may be necessary to maintain operations in the event of machine failure, resulting in average machine utilization of about 50% during peak period operations when both machines are operational. An alternative solution would be to design the CBRA so that bags could be accumulated in that area and then screened using the ETD equipment at the CBRA. CBRA space and equipment requirements should be identified in light of the agreed-upon contingency plan developed by the ILDT (see Chapter 8). Separation of alarmed and cleared bags immediately downstream of the EDS machines minimizes risk of bag mistracking by diverting the majority of bags to an untracked conveyor environment, but involves some system complexity (programmable logic controller [PLC]) programming due to larger tracking zone) and cost.
B.2.2 Example of a Linear CBIS Design Concept A2

A conceptual layout for concept A2 is shown on Figure B-2 below.
**Description of Linear CBIS Design Concept A2.** This design concept is similar to design concept A1, except that the layout is simplified by having no separation of cleared and alarmed bags (although not recommended) prior to the OSR decision point. After screening by the two EDS machines, all bags are merged onto a main line conveyor. Bags not cleared by the EDS machines are inspected by TSA personnel using OSR protocols. Those bags that have initially been cleared by EDS machines or cleared by TSA OSR personnel continue on the main line conveyor leading to the bag make-up area. Bags that are not cleared by TSA personnel (including OSR bags for which no clear decision has been reached by the time the bag reaches the decision point) are diverted off of the main line conveyor and delivered to the CBRA for manual inspection. ETD screening/search is carried out as in concept A1, above.

**Evaluation of Linear CBIS Design Concept A2.** This design concept provides a simplified version of design concept A1, permitting installation in a somewhat smaller space (and at a lower cost). However, maintaining cleared and alarmed bags on the same conveyor for a longer period of time (around 45 seconds for OSR screening) increases the possibility of bag mistracking. This risk can be mitigated by designing the BHS control systems to ensure that any mistracked bags default to the CBRA, although the additional percentage of mistracked bags will require additional screening staff. Depending on the type of system failure at a peak period, the cleared bags will not be physically separated from the alarmed bags and will require re-screening to determine their status.

Linear CBIS design concept A1 and A2 have a single main line conveyor carrying baggage from ticket counter zone to the screening zone. Linear CBIS design concept A1 and A2 share similar advantages and disadvantages.

In general, CBIS design concepts that allow for a commingling of clear and alarm bags over long conveyor section (rather than quickly separating the bags of different statuses) are not recommended.

**B.2.3 Example of a Linear CBIS Design Concept B1**

The conceptual layout for concept B1 is shown on page B-9.

**Description of Linear CBIS Design Concept B1.** This CBIS design concept has six ticket counter zones (each with 15 check-in positions) and three curbside check-in zones, from which bags are transferred and/or merged onto a single main line conveyor belt leading to the security screening and bag make-up area. A BMA is used to identify OOG bags that exceed the available cross-sectional area that can be accommodated by the EDS machines. The OOG bags are diverted directly to a conveyor leading to the CBRA for manual inspection and clearance. All other bags proceed to a diverter zone, typically consisting of three 45-degree diverters, which divide bag flow among the four EDS machines. After EDS screening, bags proceed to a vertisorter (a 45 degree diverter with parallel conveyors could also be configured) where alarmed bags are diverted and then merged onto an accumulation (OSR) conveyor pending OSR screener decision.
Bags cleared by the EDS machines proceed directly and merge onto a single main line conveyor leading to the make-up area to be discharged to a sort system. Any bags that cannot be correctly processed because of EDS machine malfunction are diverted to a purge line leading back to the main line delivery conveyor upstream of the EDS machine zone for re-screening (see Chapter 4 and Appendix D1 of the BSIS Guidelines for additional information on purge lines). Upon reaching the end of the OSR accumulation conveyor, bags that have been cleared by TSA personnel are diverted (vertisorter or 45-degree diverter) to a cleared bag belt, which, in turn, merges with the cleared bag main line conveyor leading to the bag make up area.

Bags that are not cleared by TSA personnel (including bags for which no clearance decision has been reached by the time the bag reaches the decision point) default to the CBRA for manual inspection. Positive belt tracking controls are used to monitor the location of all bags processed by the EDS machines and to enable images of screened bags sent to the CBRA to be accessed by TSA screening/search personnel to assist with directed ETD screening of the bag. Bags cleared after ETD screening/search are manually transferred onto a return conveyor, which merges with the cleared bag main line conveyor leading to the bag make-up area. Any “threat” bags identified during the CBRA process are loaded to a TCU for removal to a secure area for processing or are handled according to other procedures defined by local law enforcement.

The cleared bag main line conveyor leading to the bag make-up area, in most systems with this throughput capacity, leads to a separate sortation area, where bags are typically distributed among a number of make-up loops or piers for final sort to individual flights. This process usually requires an automatic tag reader (ATR) and manual encode spur upstream of the make-up loops or piers, as illustrated above. Sortation to individual loops or piers is typically via vertisorters or 45-degree diverters, as appropriate. The sortation component of the BHS is not included in this analysis.

**Evaluation of Linear CBIS Design Concept B1.** The use of multiple EDS machines increases the average peak period utilization of each machine (compared with concept A1) from about 50% to about 75%, as redundant screening equipment represents a smaller percentage of the system. However, the baggage conveying systems serving the EDS machines are more complex and costly. Linear CBIS design concept B1 depends on a single main line conveyor feeding bags to the EDS machine array and a single main line conveyor feeding bags to the make-up/sort area. Therefore, a single point of failure condition exists, and a bag jam or failure to a component of this conveyor impact bag processing. The bag throughput rate on these single conveyors is also relatively high during peak periods, requiring effective merge controls at inputs to the main line conveyors, with increased risk of bag jams and system down-time. This concept generally requires a separate sortation system downstream of the EDS/ETD screening area to sort bags by flight or by airline.
As in linear CBIS design concept A1, the design for concept B1 maintains the separation of clear/alarm bags; concept B1 has potentially a higher reliability compared to concepts A1 and A2 because of the additional conveyors leading to a higher number of EDS machines can compensate for EDS failure. However, as noted, the single delivery conveyor is a single point of failure.

**B.2.4 Example of a Linear CBIS Design Concept B2**

The conceptual layout for concept B2 is shown on page B-13.

**Description of Linear CBIS Design Concept B2.** This design concept is similar in functionality to concept B1, except that improved system capacity and fallback redundancy are provided by the use of dual main line conveyors delivering bags between ticketing/courtesy and EDS machines, and dual cleared main line conveyors delivering bags between EDS machines and the make-up/sortation area.

Where possible, ticketing and curbside belts are arranged to achieve an approximately balanced flow during the peak period to the two main line conveyors leading to the EDS screening zone. Upstream of the EDS, screening zone diverters on each of the two main line conveyors allow crossover from one main line conveyor to the other, for either load balancing and/or fallback redundancy. Each main line conveyor is equipped with a BMA to identify OOG bags that exceed the available cross-sectional area that can be accommodated by the EDS machines. These OOG bags are diverted from the two main line conveyors via a merge unit to a single conveyor leading directly to the CBRA for manual inspection and clearance. All other bags proceed to a diverter (one on each delivery belt), which divides bag flow among the four EDS machines. After level 1 screening, bags proceed to a sort point (vertisorter or 45 degree diverter) where alarmed bags are diverted and then merged onto an OSR accumulation conveyor, pending OSR inspection by TSA personnel. Bags cleared by the EDS machines proceed directly and merge onto one of two main line conveyors leading to the bag make-up area, to be discharged to a sort system. Bags that cannot be correctly processed because of an EDS machine malfunction may be diverted to a purge line leading back to the delivery belt upstream of the EDS machine zone for re-screening (see Chapter 4 and Appendix D of the BSIS Guidelines for additional information on purge lines).

Upon reaching the end of the OSR accumulation conveyor, bags that have been cleared by TSA personnel are diverted (vertisorter or 45-degree diverter) to a cleared bag belt, which, in turn, merges with the main line conveyor leading to the bag make-up area. Bags that are not cleared by TSA personnel (including bags for which no clearance decision has been reached by the time the bag reaches the decision point) default to the CBRA for manual inspection. Positive belt tracking controls are used to monitor the location of all bags processed by the EDS machines and to enable images of screened bags sent to the CBRA to be accessed by TSA screening/search personnel to assist with directed ETD screening of the bag. Bags cleared after ETD screening/search are loaded onto a single return conveyor that leads to a divert point to allow bags to merge with either of the two main line conveyors leading to
the bag make-up area. Any “threat” bags identified during the ETD screening/search process are loaded to a TCU for removal to a secure area for processing or are handled according to other procedures defined by local law enforcement.

The two cleared bag main line conveyors leading to the bag make-up area, in most applications, lead to a sortation area, where bags are typically distributed among a number of make-up loops or piers for final sort to individual flights. This process usually requires two ATRs and one or more manual encode spurs upstream of the make-up loops or piers. Sortation to individual loops or piers would typically be via vertisorters or 45-degree diverters, as appropriate.

**Evaluation of Linear CBIS Design Concept B2.** By addressing one of many single points of failure conditions that exists in concept B1, this design concept offers a measured level of improved system reliability by providing two independent routes from ticketing/curbside to the bag make-up/sortation area. This design ensures that, a significant portion of peak-period throughput capacity can be maintained even in the event of a major subsystem failure (e.g., failure or jam on a main line conveyor to one pair of EDS machines). However, it should be noted virtually all of the generic examples shown (A1, A2, B1, B2, & F3) contain many single points of failure. Further, the level of redundancy incorporated into a CBIS design should address the economical cost in order to achieve the desired level of system reliability and performance. This CBIS concept generally requires a separate sortation system downstream of the EDS/ETD screening area, to sort bags by flight or by airline. This sortation system could, in many cases, incur considerable extra expense.

Linear CBIS design concept B2 offers the added benefit of system reliability through the incorporation of the redundant main line conveyor over concept B1, but it does involve additional conveyor complexity and cost as a result of the additional main line conveyor and crossover connections required.

**B.2.5 Example of a Linear CBIS Design Concept F3**

The conceptual layout for concept F3 is shown on page B-15.
Figure B-5
CONCEPT F3
Description of Linear CBIS Design Concept F3. This design concept uses conventional conveyor technology—bags are transferred from five ticket counter zones (each with two rows of 25 check-in positions) and five curbside check-in zones to three main line conveyors leading to the security screening and bag make-up area.

Crossover belts allow for diverting bags between pairs of the three delivery belts for fallback redundancy. BMAs are used to identify OOG bags, which are diverted to a conveyor leading to the CBRA. All other bags proceed to a diverter zone, consisting of five 45-degree diverters, which divide bag flow among the eight EDS machines. After screening, the bags proceed to a sort point (vertisorter) where alarmed bags are diverted and then merged onto one of two OSR accumulation conveyors, pending OSR decision. Bags cleared by the EDS machines proceed directly and merge onto the three main line conveyors leading to the bag make-up area to be discharged to a sort system. Bags that cannot be correctly processed as a result of an EDS machine malfunction can be diverted to a purge line leading back to the delivery belt upstream of the EDS machine zone for re-screening (see Chapter 4 and Appendix D of the BSIS Guidelines for additional information on purge lines). Upon reaching the end of the OSR accumulation conveyors, bags that have been cleared by TSA personnel are diverted, using 45-degree diverters, to one of two cleared bag belts, which, in turn, merge with two of the main line conveyors leading to the bag make-up area. Bags that are not cleared by TSA OSR personnel (including bags for which no clearance decision has been reached by the time the bag reaches the decision point) default to the CBRA for manual inspection. Positive belt tracking controls are used to monitor the location of all bags processed by the EDS machines and to enable images of screened bags sent to the CBRA to be accessed by TSA screening/search personnel to assist with directed ETD screening of the bags. Bags cleared after ETD screening/search are loaded onto one of two return conveyors, which merge with the main line conveyors leading to the bag make-up area. Any “threat” bags identified during the ETD screening/search process are loaded to a TCU for removal to a secure area for processing, or are handled according to other procedures defined by local law enforcement.

The main line conveyors leading to the make-up area, in most applications, lead to a separate sortation area, where bags are typically distributed among a number of make-up loops or piers for final sort to individual flights. This design usually requires ATRs and a manual encode spur upstream of the make-up loops or piers. Sortation to individual loops or piers would typically be via vertisorters or 45-degree diverters, as appropriate.

Evaluation of Linear CBIS Design Concept F3. This concept has similar advantages and disadvantages to those of linear CBIS design concept B2 – concept F3 has been developed along similar lines, with additional conveyor lines and EDS machines to handle higher baggage volumes. Concept F3 is based on conventional belt conveyor/diverter technology, and would be well suited to an application where a high-capacity sortation system and bag make-up area already exists, and to which an in-line screening system needs to be added. Linear CBIS
concept F3 involves a large number of diverters and merge units, with rather complex tracking of bags through these transition points. Without the proper implementation of positive bag tracking equipment and method, as described in Appendix D1, this system has greater potential for mistracking and/or bag jams and would also require more attention to detail in the development of the control logic to appropriately divert bags to available EDS machines according to the specified load balancing logic.

**B.3 GENERIC EXAMPLES OF DECENTRALIZED CBIS DESIGN CONCEPTS**

Decentralized CBIS design concepts provide dedicated EDS machines for each ticket counter bank or each ticket counter (as with decentralized concept E2). In addition, each EDS machine would typically have a dedicated CBRA in which both OSR and ETD search can be conducted. It may be that the CBRA can be combined, which would then typically require additional ATRs on the conveyor, allowing automated sortation of alarm bags cleared at the CBRA to dedicated make-up devices.

Two variations of decentralized CBIS design concepts are described below:

- **Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E1**—Baggage from a ticket counter bank is transferred through a single conveyor to a dedicated EDS machine.

- **Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E2**—Baggage from two ticket counters is manually or mechanically loaded into a dedicated EDS machine right behind the ticket counters.
B.3.1 Example of a Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E1

A conceptual layout for concept E1 is shown on Figure B-6 below.

**Figure B-6**

**CONCEPT E1**

---

**Description of Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E1.** This concept is configured to provide dedicated EDS machines for each check-in zone, with a back-up machine provided as a common-use unit or to provide overflow capacity. Each of the three ticketing/curbside modules would deliver bags through a BMA to a dedicated EDS machine. A diverter immediately downstream of the BMA would divert OOG bags to a bypass line leading directly to the CBRA. This bypass line can also be used in the event of failure of one of the three dedicated EDS machines to divert bags to the fourth fallback EDS machine. Positive Bag Tracking controls are
required to differentiate between OOG bags and those that have been rerouted because of an equipment failure. OOG bags would proceed directly to the CBRA, whereas other bags would be diverted to the fallback EDS machine for EDS screening. Immediately downstream of each of the four EDS machines, a diverter would be used to deliver alarm bags to the CBRA via an OSR accumulation conveyor to facilitate OSR screening. A purge line can be also provided to route bags that cannot be processed as a result of an EDS machine malfunction can be diverted back to the fourth EDS machine (see Chapter 4 and Appendix D of the BSIS Guidelines for additional information on purge lines). The diverter feeding this purge line is located immediately upstream of the CBRA.

Bags cleared by each of the three dedicated EDS machines would proceed directly to a dedicated make-up loop, allowing a relatively fast process time for the majority of bags. Bags cleared by the fourth fallback EDS machine and bags cleared by OSR or by personnel in the CBRA would be merged on a single sort line equipped with an ATR and three sort outputs leading to the three bag make-up loops. The illustration above shows this sort line terminating at the third make-up loop; in this case, any bag that fails to be read at the ATR would default to this loop, together with any bag destined for the first or second make-up loop that is not correctly sorted as a result of, for example, mistracking or diverter malfunction. In this case, personnel at the third make-up loop would be required to check bag tags and redistribute any bag that should have been sorted to the first or second make-up loop. An optional recirculation loop could be provided, as indicated by a dashed line in the illustration, to allow mistracked or otherwise unsortable bags to be returned to the upstream end of the sort conveyor for resortation. A manual encoding station is shown at the upstream end of the sort line (downstream of the ATR) to encode bags that fail to be read by the ATR.

**Evaluation of Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E1.** The primary advantage of this design concept is that it provides a direct and relatively fast point-to-point delivery path for the majority of bags processed with, under normal circumstances, only a small percentage of bags requiring additional processing and/or longer delivery times. The disadvantage of the layout is that it does not readily permit load balancing over all four machines.

Typically, this concept is appropriate for three separate airlines with approximately equal throughput and demand profiles, where it is desirable to operate independent systems for the majority of bags and to limit shared facilities to the minority of bags that need special handling.

This CBIS design concept also provides relatively quick separation of clear/alarm bags (similar to some linear CBIS concepts), requires simple PLC configuration, and has a relatively flexible provision for OSR view time. This concept provides a medium level of reliability as there would be only one EDS machine and transfer conveyor for each ticket counter bank and so if that dedicated EDS fails, screening of bags could be done by the fallback EDS) However, because equipment is spread out...
over a relatively larger floor area (mainly in bags rooms and Airline Ticket Office [ATO] space), challenges for rights-of-way and maintenance may result.

**B.3.2 Example of a Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E2**

A conceptual layout for concept E2 is shown on Figure B-7 below.

![Figure B-7 CONCEPT E2](image)
Description of Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E2. This concept is typically configured to provide dedicated EDS machines for two or more check-in counters. Several options exist for the configuration of this design concept. One typical configuration would be to move the ticket counters forward and place EDS machines behind the counters, either parallel or perpendicular to the existing take-away belt. Depending on spatial constraints, queuing conveyors can be placed in front of the EDS machines. Baggage is loaded by passengers on the bag-well and by ticket agents or loaders onto the EDS in-feed conveyor. Alarm bags would remain at the exit of the EDS machine until an OSR decision is given by a TSA operator (which can be either local or remote). Level 3 screening is then typically conducted in a centralized CBRA (but could be done in decentralized CBRAs if economically justified). Baggage is conveyed to the CBRA on an exit-integrated conveyor system with bag tracking. An ATR is located prior to the decision point on the take-away belt.

Another potential configuration (illustrations not included in this appendix) could be S-shaped, which places the EDS machine parallel to the ticket counter and take-away belt and requires that the ticket counter be moved 13 feet away from the take-away belt. A new take-away belt is installed behind the counter for bag queuing and three 90-degree turns are used to create additional queuing space prior to the EDS machine. Alternatively, when the width of the ticket counter area is constrained, the EDS machine can be placed perpendicular to the counter and take-away belt and one 90-degree turn brings bags from the new take-away belt to the machine (L-shaped).

A variation on the L-shaped configuration is a T-shaped configuration where two queuing belts can feed a single machine from opposite sides if one machine can handle the throughput but more bag queue space is required.

In another variation, the EDS machines can be placed in each ticket counter bag well and integrated at the exit with the existing take-away belt, which requires replacing the existing bag well with an in-feed conveyor that also acts as a bag scale. In this configuration, one EDS machine can service two ticket counter positions.

Evaluation of Decentralized CBIS Design Concept E2. The major advantage of this concept is that it offers high system reliability with multiple EDS machines that can be used when other EDS machines fail; however, this ultimately leads to relatively low EDS machine utilization rates. In addition, this is a relatively simple CBIS that requires a simple PLC and is relatively easy to scale to meet future demand growth (assuming no lobby spatial limitations). The main disadvantage is that this design concept has relatively increased impacts on the public ticket lobby and potential impact on overall CBIS performance based on airline staff procedures. This design concept is also susceptible to potential baggage mistracking at the decision point (for bags pending OSR decision), which has to be resolved manually. Finally, there is a relatively high degree of commingling of clear and alarm bags on the take-away belt carrying bags pending OSR decision.
Appendix C

PRE-DESIGN PHASE CASE STUDY – OAKLAND INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT

This appendix provides an example of the pre-design process that planners and designers would typically conduct in developing a CBIS design. The example is presented as case study based on an actual project for Terminal 1 at Oakland International Airport. The case study describes pre-design activities and topics including: zoning schema definition; in-line system types; demand estimation; baggage screening equipment requirements; and preliminary alternative concepts definition, analysis, and evaluation.

This example is based on a study that has been commissioned by Oakland International Airport; however, some costs estimates are derived from the BSIS Guidelines rather than the actual cost estimates developed for the Oakland study. These cost estimates do not necessarily reflect final results and conclusions for the study commissioned by Oakland International Airport.
PRE-DESIGN PHASE CASE STUDY
OAKLAND INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT

Oakland International Airport (the Airport) recently undertook a study to identify optimally scaled CBIS alternatives for Terminal 1.

In the spring of 2004 a design study was initiated by the airport to replace the existing ETD-based baggage screening system with an in-line EDS screening system serving Southwest Airlines (the sole airline tenant at Terminal 2). The design concept called for a conveyor system to transfer baggage from ticket counters to an in-line EDS screening area adjacent to the terminal where EDS machines automatically screen baggage for explosives and divert false alarm and oversize baggage to a CBRA for resolution. Baggage cleared by the EDS machines proceed to Southwest’s outbound baggage make-up carousel. Terminal 2 in-line system became operational in February 2006. Since this earlier study already identified an optimal screening solution for Terminal 2, it was not included in the above-mentioned study for Terminal 1.

Key objectives for the optimally scaled alternatives for Terminal 1 at the airport included: (1) minimizing the number of manual baggage screening operations involved and (2) improving the overall level of customer service at the Airport while maintaining 100% checked baggage screening. This study is presented as an example to illustrate the methodology used to identify a preferred alternative as described in the BSIS Guidelines.

The following paragraphs will describe the steps taken in identifying a number of CBIS alternatives for a given terminal and then the iterative process to select the preferred alternative. The following topics are covered:

- Zoning schema definition
- In-line system types
- Demand estimation
- Baggage screening equipment requirements
- Preliminary alternative concepts definition
- Analysis and evaluation

C.1 BACKGROUND

Terminal 1 serves a mix of domestic air carriers and affiliated commuter operators. Currently there are three EDS machines used for screening checked baggage at Terminal 1.

United Airlines uses one stand-alone EDS machine (GE CTX-2500) located behind the airline ticket counter. Selectee bags moving along the conveyor to the United
Airlines’ make-up area are manually removed and sent through the EDS machine for security screening.

JetBlue use a semi-integrated EDS machine (GE CTX-5500) located behind the JetBlue ticket counter. A conveyor connects the ticket counters to the EDS machine. All of the JetBlue bags are first screened by the CTX-5500. Cleared bags are sent to the make-up area and alarmed bags are sent to a CBRA where alarms are resolved by TSA agents.

The remainder of Terminal 1 airlines use manual ETD screening located in the baggage make-up rooms. Selectee bags are manually carried to the third EDS machine (GE CTX-5500) located in the lobby, where they are screened and then sorted and manually placed on the conveyor and sent to the appropriate airline make-up room.

The Airport is achieving 100% baggage screening; however the process is labor intensive, with the majority of the bags undergoing ETD screening as opposed to being screened by EDS machines. The Airport wants to move ahead with an in-line EDS system to improve customer service, scalability, and airport growth opportunities. In the Spring of 2006, a study was conducted to identify feasible CBIS alternatives that could be implemented at the Airport.

Terminal 1 existing conditions are shown on Figure C-1.

C.2 ZONING SCHEMA DEFINITION

As explained in Chapter 5 of the BSIS Guidelines, there are several ways of combining checked baggage into screening systems. Taking into consideration spatial and operational constraints, two zone hierarchy schemas were developed for Terminal 1 and are shown on Figures C-2 and C-3.
For Terminal 1, the F3 Zones correspond to each take-away belt, while the F1 Zone comprises the entire terminal. At the F2 Zone level, there are several options to combine checked baggage into screening systems. For the purpose of this case study, two options are considered for F2 Zone groupings: Option A (Figure C-2) divides the ticket counters into three groups combining checked baggage into three screening systems, while Option B (Figure C-3) divides the ticket counters into two groups combining checked baggage into two screening systems.
C.3 IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPES

As explained in detail in Chapter 5, there are several system types and EDS equipment for in-line system, ranging from highly centralized systems using high-throughput EDS machines to very decentralized systems using low-throughput EDS machines. Since the zoning schema, the system type selection, and the demand estimation are inter-related, it is expected that several iterations will be necessary to find an optimally scaled solution for each terminal. Thus, it is recommended that, at this early stage of analysis, all spatially feasible system type options be considered and carried forward in the evaluation.

The following is a general description of potential system types for three zoning levels at Terminal 1 that were considered as initial candidates for screening alternatives:

- **Terminal 1, F3 Zone Groupings**—For screening systems reflecting the F3 Zone groupings, decentralized system types are recommended. Thus, at F3 Zone level, mini in-line systems are acceptable options. Stand-alone EDS systems were not considered because they would present spatial constraints to any expansion that would be necessary to accommodate growth beyond the design year.

- **Terminal 1, F2 Zone Groupings**—At F2 Zone level, depending on the expected checked baggage demand volumes, high-throughput centralized systems, such as high-volume and medium-volume in-line systems, or lower-throughput systems, such as mini in-line systems are acceptable options.

- **Terminal 1, F1 Zone Grouping**—At Zone 1 level, a centralized system is recommended. Thus, both high-volume and medium-volume in-line systems are acceptable options for this terminal. The choice between the two system types depends on the date of beneficial use (DBU), since that will dictate the type of EDS equipment expected to be certified by that date. Since DBU is expected to be after 2008, both high-volume and medium-volume in-line systems would be viable. If a medium-volume system is ultimately selected, all the necessary steps should be taken to make the system flexible enough to accommodate high-volume EDS machines when they become available.

An initial pass of a relatively large number of alternatives was done and all alternatives that are clearly not feasible were immediately eliminated without further consideration. In this initial pass it was determined that structural and spatial constraints render any expansion or major building modification required to accommodate the in-line systems, cost prohibitive. Accordingly at Terminal 1, all of the full in-line concepts were found to be infeasible. Only the mini-in-line system type layouts designed for the F-3 Zone were found to be operationally and spatially feasible at Terminal 1.
Of the F3 Zone alternatives, the Reveal CT-80 (CT-80) and Analogic King Cobra (AN KC) EDS machines are considered to be better options for the Airport when compared to the L-3 3DX 6000 and GE CTX-5500 with Viewlink. The CT-80 and AN KC machines are considered superior products because they are newer, have better performance capabilities, and strong upgrade possibilities for the future. Therefore the L-3 3DX 6000 and GE CTX-5500 with Viewlink are also removed from further consideration.

The EDS machines mentioned in this case-study were the original EDS machines considered for the study commissioned by OAK and do not necessarily match the list of EDS machines as specified in the BSIS Guidelines.

Table C-1 provides a list of all initial alternatives considered and brief reason of rejecting those initial alternatives.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminal 1</th>
<th>Accepted / Rejected</th>
<th>Alternative Name / Reason for Rejection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F3 ZONE - MINI-IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>Alternative 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>Alternatives 2 and 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Inferior Performance and Limited Upgrading Opportunities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-5500 (with ViewLink)</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Inferior Performance and Limited Upgrading Opportunities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2 ZONE OPTION 1 – MINI IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-5500 (with ViewLink)</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2 ZONE OPTION 2 - MEDIUM-VOLUME IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9000</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9800</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6600</td>
<td>Rejected</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1 ZONE - MEDIUM-VOLUME IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9000</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE CTX-9800</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6000</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-3 3DX 6600</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>Spatial Constraints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The list of possible system types has been reduced to three preliminary alternatives (Alternative 1 for the CT-80 machines and Alternatives 2 and 3 for the AN KC machines). These preliminary alternatives are investigated further in the following sections.
C.4 DEMAND ESTIMATION

Existing checked baggage screening flows have to be estimated for each screening zone described above.

C.4.1 List of Airlines

Table C-2 lists Terminal 1 airlines by screening zone. The F1 and F2 zone groupings have been removed, since all of the F1 and F2 alternatives were deemed spatially infeasible during the initial pass of alternatives in Section C-3 above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zone</th>
<th>Airlines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F31</td>
<td>B6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F32</td>
<td>AQ, CO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F33</td>
<td>AA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F34</td>
<td>HP, YV, US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F35</td>
<td>AS, QX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F36</td>
<td>DL, OO, TZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F37</td>
<td>UA, A296, XX (a)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Assumed new entrant using currently occupied gates that will be availability after completion of expansion of Terminal 2

Legend:
- AQ - Aloha Airlines
- AA - American Airlines
- YV - Mesa Airlines
- AS - Alaska Airlines
- DL - Delta Airlines
- TZ - ATA
- A296 - United Express
- B6 - JetBlue
- CO - Continental Airlines
- HP - America West
- US - US Air
- QX - Horizon Airlines
- OO - Sky West
- UA - United Airlines

C.4.2 Peak Month and Associated Passenger Characteristics

Based on data received from the Airport, discussions with the airlines, and a detailed analysis of flight schedules, the peak month for all screening zones was determined to be August. The Average Day of the Peak Month (ADPM) and the peak day of the peak month (PDPM) for 2006 at Terminal 1 are August 24 and August 25, respectively.
Load factors and O/D percentages were directly obtained from the airlines for the month of August. Typical earliness distributions for domestic carriers were assumed and later confirmed by the airlines. The number of checked bags per passenger was either provided by the airlines or derived from surveys conducted at the Airport in the summer of 2002.

Airline-provided data is commercially sensitive information and accordingly, this data is not reported here.

C.4.3 Determination of the Design Day

Based on the airport future strategy it is unlikely that the capacity at Terminal 1 will increase substantially in the foreseeable future. The reasons for this slow down in growth at Terminal 1 include:

1. The Terminal 2 expansion plan is under way and, once completed, all international flights and Southwest Airlines (Southwest) flights will be gated in Terminal 2 (making the current 4 Southwest gates located at Terminal 1 available).

2. It is expected that either a new airline will begin service at Terminal 1 or a current airline located at Terminal 1 will expand in subsequent years, requiring two of the four Terminal 1 gates used by Southwest. This new airline is represented by XX Airlines (XX).

Therefore, to ensure that the screening system alternatives were designed based on a realistic growth rate given the constraints on the terminal, two design days were compared as described below:

1. **Standard methodology** – This design day was constructed based on the methodology outlined in Chapter 6 of the BSIS Guidelines. The ADPM flight schedule for Terminal 1 was identified, and using the TAF forecasted growth rates, grown to reflect 2013 passenger volumes (2013 is DBU + 5 years for the proposed in-line system). According to the TAF forecasts, total enplaned passengers (excluding general aviation) are expected to grow from 7.12 MAP in 2006 to 9.90 MAP in 2013. This represents an annual growth of 4.82%. Using this method, baggage flows for the ADPM were grown by 4.82% annually to 2013.

2. **Strategy-orientated methodology** – This design day was built based on the Airport’s future strategy, namely that no additional gates will be built at the terminal and that Southwest will move completely to Terminal 2. Two of the four vacated gates in Terminal 1 will be used by a future airline (XX Airlines). The remaining two gates could be used to accommodate growth of carriers currently serving the Airport. In order to properly reflect the terminal’s capacity, the design day flight schedule was based on the 2006 PDPM flight schedule. This schedule was sent to the airlines for
verification, and new flights were added to the schedule as per the airlines’ request. In line with the Airport’s strategy, Southwest was removed from the flight schedule and XX Airlines was put in its place. The flight schedule for XX airlines was based on Southwest’s gating schedule for two of Southwest’s four gates at Terminal 1. Gate utilizations were analyzed based on gating information provided by the Airport staff. For gates with low utilizations additional flights are added to create the design day flight schedule. Using this method, a design day flight schedule based on the detailed information provided by the airlines and Airport staff was created and baggage flows were generated from this flight schedule.

A comparison of the two design day baggage flows for Terminal 1 is provided in Table C-3 below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>675</td>
<td>938</td>
<td>701</td>
<td>760</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Southwest currently uses their own in-line system located at Terminal 2. Therefore Southwest flights have been removed from all baggage flow calculations.
(b) The ADPM and PDPM flight schedule used in this analysis was based on OAG forecasted data from March 2006 and could vary from the actual schedule that occurred on this day.

The peak hour baggage flows of the PDPM (701 bags) and ADPM (675 bags) were very similar, as can be seen in Table C-3 above. The strategy-orientated methodology increased the peak hour baggage flow by only 8% from the PDPM, while the peak hour baggage flows of the Standard methodology grew by 39%. A 39% increase in the predicted peak hour baggage flow is considered to be very aggressive given operational constraints of the carriers at Terminal 1.

Based on the above findings and further consultation with the airport, the strategy-oriented design day based on the airport’s future strategy was selected as the preferred design day. This design day is used throughout the remainder of this case study.

The design day accepted by the airport is summarized as follows:
• 116 departing operations
• 15,585 departing seats
• 12 gates available (approximately 10 daily turns per gage)

The method for estimating baggage demand differs from the standard methodology described in Chapter 6 of the BSIS Guidelines and is included here as an example where an alternative method may be used if there is sufficient rationale for doing so. The rationale in this case is based on two key observations. The first observation is that the high gate utilization indicates that the terminal is currently operating at or near maximum capacity. The second observation is that site constraints limit future gate expansion to 2 gates. The schedule that was developed represents a reasonable estimate of the maximum demand that the terminal could ever accommodate. When using a demand estimation methodology different than that described in Chapter 6 of the BSIS Design Guidelines, justification for doing so must be provided to the TSA. TSA must review and approve the method and results before proceeding with design.

C.4.4 Future Checked Baggage Flow Projections

Checked baggage flows by screening zone were generated using the design day flight schedules, load factors, O/D percentages, earliness distributions, and checked bags per passenger assumptions.
Figure C-4 shows hourly baggage profile for the Terminal 1 design day.

![Figure C-4: HOURLY BAGGAGE PROFILE](image)

Figure C-5 shows the baggage demand profile for one of the F3 zone levels at Terminal 1. The peak hourly flow will be used as the basis for calculating high-level equipment requirements for the Pre-Design Phase. The same method was applied to all F3 zones to calculate high-level equipment requirements per each zone.
C.5 BAGGAGE SCREENING EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

The following paragraphs show the calculation of screening equipment requirements based on the high-level methodology described in Chapter 6 of the BSIS Design Guidelines.

C.5.1 EDS, OSR, and ETD Equipment Requirements

Table C-4 below compares candidate system types for each zoning group identified in Section C.2. The table lists the candidate system types, estimated peak-hour surged design year baggage volumes, assumed EDS machine throughputs, estimated number of EDS machines and required number of OSR and ETD stations by airline screening zone for Terminal 1. More detail regarding the calculations and assumptions used in creating Table C-4 is provided in the following paragraphs.
Table C-4
EDS, OSR AND ETD EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS BY SCREENING ZONE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zone</th>
<th>Airlines</th>
<th>Peak-Hour Surged Baggage Volume</th>
<th>EDS Machines</th>
<th>No. with redundancy</th>
<th>No. of Combined OSR ETD Stations</th>
<th>No. of OSR Stations</th>
<th>No. of ETD Stations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F3 ZONE - MINI-IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80 – Alternative 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>B6</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AQ, CO</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>HP, YV, US</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;5&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AS, QX</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DL, OO, TZ</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;7&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>UA, A296, XX</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra – Alternatives 2 and 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>B6</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AQ, CO</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>HP, YV, US</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;5&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AS, QX</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>DL, OO, TZ</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3&lt;sub&gt;7&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>UA, A296, XX</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C.5.1.1 Peak Hour Surged Baggage Volume

The peak 10-minute baggage flow calculated in Section C.4.2 is surged and then converted into an hourly value and used in Table C-4. The surge factor is applied to the baggage flow to account for randomness in the bag arrival process into the screening system.

C.5.1.2 System Type

The system types listed in Table C-4 dictate the EDS equipment and its throughput. The peak-hour surged baggage volume is divided by the assumed EDS equipment throughput for each of the candidate system types (a detailed summary of EDS equipment assumptions by system type is reported in Chapter 5 of the BSIS Design Guidelines).

For the mini-in-line system, throughputs and EDS equipment requirements for the AN KC and CT-80 EDS machines are listed.
C.5.1.3 Redundancy

As discussed in previous paragraphs, activity at Terminal 1 is constrained by the number of gates, thus it is unlikely that additional growth will occur at this terminal beyond the design year. For this reason, the system does not need additional flexibility to accommodate growth beyond the design year. Given the decentralized nature of Terminal 1 mini in-line systems, redundancy will be provided through the use of nearby systems. While the demand profiles indicate the peaks generally occur early in the morning, some of the EDS equipment are not fully utilized and can offer spare capacity if needed.

Redundant equipment is only cost-effective for high-speed and medium-speed in-line systems, where machine downtime can have a significant impact on system performance due to the high throughput of each EDS machine.

C.5.1.4 OSR and ETD Station Requirements

Mini-in-line systems support the use of a centralized or remotely located OSR facility. In addition, for mini-in-line systems, OSR and ETD screening functions can be combined and performed by the same ETD screener with individual CBRAs dedicated to each system.

The formulas for calculating dedicated OSR and combined OSR and ETD station requirements are explained in detail in Chapter 7 of the BSIS Design Guidelines; however, an example of the calculations used in Table C-4 is provided below. For the example the AN KC EDS machines proposed for the F3 Zone level are used. Please note that all of the values used in these calculations are based on the equipment assumptions listed in Tables 5-2 and 5-3 of the BSIS Design Guidelines. False alarm rates are considered Sensitive Security Information (SSI) and can be requested from TSA.

The number of separate OSR and ETD screening stations required:

\[
N_{OSR} = \frac{\text{Sum of Throughput}_{EDS} \times FA_{EDS}}{\text{Throughput}_{OSR}}
\]

\[
= \frac{350 \text{ bph} \times 13\%}{180 \text{ bph}}
\]

\[
= 0.26 \approx 1
\]

\[
N_{ETD \text{ Station}} = \frac{\text{Sum of Throughput}_{EDS} \times FA_{EDS} \times (1-CR_{OSR})}{\text{Throughput}_{ETD \text{ Screener}}}
\]

\[
= \frac{350 \text{ bph} \times 13\% \times (40\%)}{24.2 \text{ bph}}
\]

\[
= 0.75 \approx 1
\]
The number of combined OSR and ETD screening stations required:
\[
N_{\text{ETD Station}} = \frac{(\text{Sum of Throughput}_{\text{EDS}} \times FA_{\text{EDS}})}{(\text{Throughput}_{\text{OSR/ETD Screener}})}
\]
\[
= \frac{(350 \text{ bph} \times 13\%)}{45.3 \text{ bph}}
\]
\[
= 1.01 \approx 2 \text{ (rounded up)}
\]

Note: All EDS false alarm rates and OSR clear rate are notional and are used for this example only. Please contact TSA to obtain actual false alarm rates and OSR clear rates.

C.5.6 Preliminary Evaluation of Initially Accepted Alternatives

As mentioned above an initial pass of each of the alternatives has been conducted in which all alternatives that were not feasible from an operational or spatial standpoint were rejected therefore all of the full in-line concepts were found to be infeasible (due to severe spatial constraints as well as requirement that screened bags are redistributed to dedicated make-up devices at Terminal 1. If bags are not conveyed back to dedicated make-up devices, there is undue burden on airlines operation requiring them to sort bags at a common-use make-up device).

Only mini-in-line system type layouts designed for the F-3 Zone are feasible at Terminal 1. Of these alternatives, the CT-80 and AN KC EDS machines are considered to be better options for the Airport when compared to the L-3 3DX and GE CTX-5500 with Viewlink. The CT-80 and AN KC machines are considered superior products because they are newer, have better performance capabilities, and strong upgrade possibilities for the future. Therefore the L-3 3DX 6000, L-3 3DX 6600, and GE CTX-5500 with Viewlink were also removed from further consideration.

Based on baggage flow projections, and equipment requirements, the AN KC and CT-80 machines remained as viable alternatives, as shown in Table C-5. These two machine types used at the F3 Zone level are all that remain as viable alternatives from the multitude of alternatives that were initially considered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alternative Name</th>
<th>F3 ZONE - MINI-IN-LINE SYSTEM TYPE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reveal CT-80</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogic King Cobra</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alternative 1

Alternatives 2 and 3

These preliminary alternatives are investigated further in the following sections.
C.6 PRELIMINARY ALTERNATIVE CONCEPTUAL LAYOUTS

Alternative conceptual layouts were developed based on the zone groupings, equipment requirements, and system types and the initial evaluation of alternatives summarized in Table C-1. The initial evaluation of the alternatives resulted in three alternatives being short listed and developed for Terminal 1.

C.6.1 Alternative 1 – Mini In-Line (Reveal CT-80) Systems

This alternative is a conceptual layout for the F3 Zone grouping of Terminal 1. Seventeen Reveal CT-80 EDS machines are placed directly behind the ticket counters. The ticket counters are divided into 7 ticket counter groups (F3 Zone grouping). Each group is served by 1, 2, or 3 EDS machines and 1 CBRA, where combined OSR and ETD screening functions are performed. The machines are located directly behind the ticket agents and are parallel to the ticket counters. Each grouping of machines has a single conveyor leading to the make-up area and CBRA. The OSR and ETD screening functions are combined and performed in the CBRA units. The differences between dedicated and combined OSR functionality would be investigated further if Alternative 1 was chosen as a preferred alternative; however, given the highly decentralized nature of this alternative, combined OSR/ETD is likely to be the most cost-effective approach. A conceptual drawing of Alternative 1 is provided in Figure C-9.

Figure C-9

TERMINAL 1 ALTERNATIVE 1 CONCEPTUAL DRAWING
C.6.2 Terminal 1 Alternative 2 – Decentralized Mini In-Line (Analogic King Cobra) Systems

This alternative is a conceptual design for the F3 Zone grouping of Terminal 1. As shown in Figure C-10, 7 AN KC EDS machines are used. The ticket counters are divided into the same 7 ticket counter groups as in Alternative 1. However, each group is served by one EDS machine integrated downstream of the ticket counter take-away conveyor. This alternative was further split into two parts, Alternative 2a and Alternative 2b. Alternative 2a has combined OSR and ETD screening functions, similar to Alternative 1. Alternative 2b uses dedicated OSR screening, which would be conducted in a separate screening room. The conceptual drawings for Alternative 2a and Alternative 2b are the same, except for the remote OSR room which is already built as part of the existing in-line system in Terminal 2.

Figure C-10
TERMINAL 1 ALTERNATIVE 2A AND 2B CONCEPTUAL DIAGRAM
C.6.3 Terminal 1 Alternative 3 – Partially Consolidated Mini In-Line (Analogic King Cobra) Systems

This alternative is also a conceptual design for the F3 Zone grouping of Terminal 1. 7 AN KC EDS machines are used. The ticket counters are divided into 7 ticket counter groups. Each group is served by a single EDS machine integrated downstream of the ticket counter take-away conveyor. ETD screening and baggage make-up functions are partially consolidated since there is a common CBRA and make-up area for every two EDS machines. In addition, OSR is performed remotely, while ETD screening functions are performed in the CBRA since this is a more staff-efficient screening method which can be effectively used when the CBIS design calls for common use CBRA. A conceptual drawing of Alternative 3 is provided in Figure C-11.
C.7 ANALYSIS AND EVALUATION

Alternatives evaluation was conducted using both qualitative assessments based on expert judgment and quantitative analysis of the life-cycle costs of the alternatives.

C.7.1 Qualitative Assessment

Table C-6 shows the Qualitative Assessment Matrix and criteria used for assessing all spatially feasible alternatives for Terminal 1. There were several qualitative criteria used to evaluate the alternatives based on expert judgment, namely:

1. Customer level of service – the impact that each of the alternatives will have on the passengers experience at the airport,

2. Impact to airport operations – the reliability and maintainability of the EDS equipment and the contingency procedures that can be implemented if a machine is down during a peak period as well as the impact that the alternative will have on the airlines,

3. Economic considerations – the costs associated with TSA staffing salaries and with implementing and maintaining the alternative, and

4. Design criteria – the impact that the alternative will have on the existing facilities as well as the ease with which the alternative will be constructed or expanded.

Results of the qualitative assessment are shown in Table C-6 by alternative:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Alternative 1</th>
<th>Alternative 2a</th>
<th>Alternative 2b</th>
<th>Alternative 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Screening Capacity</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Level of Service</td>
<td>Impacted</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utilization of EDS equipment</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reliability and availability</td>
<td>Lower</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contingency operations</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintainability</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
<td>Adequate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact to airline operations</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on existing facilities</td>
<td>Higher</td>
<td>Lower</td>
<td>Lower</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expandability</td>
<td>More difficult</td>
<td>Feasible</td>
<td>Feasible</td>
<td>Feasible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructability and phasing</td>
<td>More difficult</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>More difficult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All alternatives provide adequate screening capacity, meet performance standards, are equally maintainable, and provide moderate EDS utilization (typical to decentralized alternatives).

**Alternative 1.** Alternative 1 has the highest impact on customer level of service since lobby space would be reduced by approximately 40% to accommodate the EDS machines behind the ticket counters. The maintainability of this alternative is the lowest due to the highest number of EDS machines. Alternative 1 is the worst performing alternative from economic and design standpoints since it has high capital, maintenance and operating costs; requires the highest number of TSA screeners; has the highest impact on existing facilities; and is the most difficult to construct, phase, and expand.

**Alternative 2a.** Alternative 2a was rated the highest in terms of the evaluation criteria. At the end of the workshop it was decided that Alternative 2a is the most suitable type of checked baggage screening system to be implemented in Terminal 1. Alternative 2a has cost and operational characteristics consistent with the Port expansion plans and is sufficiently flexible to permit relatively quick adaptability to change (e.g., different EDS equipment).

**Alternative 2b.** Alternative 2b was rated the second highest in terms of the evaluation criteria. It is not as well suited to the Airport as Alternative 2a because of
the higher capital cost required to install the remote OSR. Also the 95th% bag time in
system was 8.90 minutes as opposed to 6.34 minutes for Alternative 2a. Although
fewer bags were processed in the BIR for Alternative 2b than for Alternative 2a,
Alternative 2b still had a higher 95th% bag time in system because all of the bags
that were sent to the BIR were subjected to a directed ETD search which requires a
longer processing time than the combined OSR/ETD search that is done in
Alternative 2a.

**Alternative 3.** Alternative 3 has a high impact on airline operations because of
the combined make-up areas, which are not airline specific. In addition, the BIR is
not easily accessible and that may create operational and security difficulties.
Alternative 3 has high capital costs; is difficult to construct and phase; and would
have a significant impact on the airline make-up operations because it requires
airlines to share baggage carousels. In addition, it occupies more space because of
the increased amount of automated conveyors.

Alternatives 2a and 2b had the highest score, while Alternative 1 had the lowest
score when the 4 alternatives were ranked, based on the above high-level qualitative
evaluation and expert judgment.

**C.7.2 Life-Cycle Cost Analysis**

A life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) was then conducted on the alternatives. Based
upon the LCCA of each alternative, the preliminary ranking, and discussions with
the TSA and the Airport a decision was made as to the optimal solution that will
best meet the Airport’s needs while remaining a viable cost-effective alternative for
the TSA.

The LCCA was based on the methodology presented in Chapter 9 of the BSIS Design
Guidelines. A real discount rate of 7% per annum was used as well as an analysis
period of 20 years. The costs used in the LCCA were based on the costs provided in
Chapter 9 unless otherwise stated. A summary of these costs is provided below in
Table C-7.
Table C-7  
UNIT COSTS USED IN THE LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Life Cycle Costs (a)</th>
<th>Alternative 1 CT-80</th>
<th>Alternative 2a AN KC</th>
<th>Alternative 2b AN KC</th>
<th>Alternative 3 AN KC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capital Costs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment purchase</td>
<td>$285,000</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment installation</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment refurbishment</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
<td>$85,000</td>
<td>$85,000</td>
<td>$85,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment replacement</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS cost of removal (b)</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required infrastructure modifications to the building and BHS (c)</td>
<td>$350,000</td>
<td>$650,000</td>
<td>$700,000</td>
<td>$2,100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operating and Maintenance Costs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment maintenance</td>
<td>$28,500</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment power consumption</td>
<td>1.6 KWH</td>
<td>4.4 KWH</td>
<td>4.4 KWH</td>
<td>4.4 KWH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental BHS maintenance costs (including additional maintenance personnel)</td>
<td>$33,040</td>
<td>$33,040</td>
<td>$33,040</td>
<td>$33,040</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) All of the costs listed are unit costs per machine.
(b) Cost not provided in the BSIS Design Guidelines but instead determined using expert judgment.
(c) The costs vary by alternative due to the fact that some alternatives require significantly more infrastructure modifications than others. Whenever necessary expert judgment was used.

The LCCA methodology used to calculate the LCCs is listed below:

- It is assumed that the installation of the in-line system would begin in 2007 and the in-line system’s DBU would be 2008.

- All EDS machines will be refurbished after 7 years and replaced with new machines 4 years later.

- All maintenance costs will be covered by the manufacturer during the first year of operation for a new EDS machine.

- Using expert judgment, incremental BHS operating costs were calculated at 10% of the screening equipment operating costs.

- It is assumed that the EDS machine residual value is equal to the disposal cost of the EDS machine. Since these two costs balance each other, they have not been included in the calculations.

Planning Guidelines and Design Standards for Checked Baggage Inspection Systems
Version 1.0, October 10, 2007
TSA513
Based on the assumptions and costs provided above, the total net present value of the LCCs for each of the alternatives is presented below. Please refer to the Table C-9 through C-12 for more detailed calculations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alternatives</th>
<th>Life Cycle Cost*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1 Alternative 1</td>
<td>$41,348,128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Alternative 2a</td>
<td>$25,272,491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Alternative 2b</td>
<td>$22,771,578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Alternative 3</td>
<td>$31,577,852</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Present value costs over 20 years.

The lowest LCC for Terminal 1 was Alternative 2b ($22.77 million) with Alternative 2a having the next lowest LCC ($25.27 million).

The difference in Terminal 1 LCCs between Alternatives 2a and 2b was relatively small (Alternative 2b is approximately 10% less than Alternative 2a on a life-cycle cost basis), so these two alternatives were kept for presentation to stakeholders while Alternatives 1 and 3 are removed from further consideration.

Since the LCCs for Alternative 2a and Alternative 2b were similar and Alternative 2a was rated as qualitatively superior to Alternative 2b as identified in the Qualitative Assessment Matrix (Table C-6), it was chosen as the preferred alternative for Terminal 1. Note that this decision was based on input from stakeholders, assessment of the qualitative impacts of the systems, and the marginal difference in LCCs between Alternatives 2a and 2b. Therefore, while Alternative 2a was slightly more expensive from a life-cycle cost perspective, the qualitative benefits of the system outweighed the slightly higher life-cycle cost.

**C.8 FINAL CONSIDERATIONS**

The development of conceptual alternatives and the selection of the preferred solutions for any airport terminal is an iterative process that is based both on quantifiable analysis and good judgment. Terminal spatial constraints, airlines’ preferences, and TSA security and operational considerations play a major role in determining which zoning schema can be successfully translated into a feasible alternative concept. Cost considerations are fundamental in trimming down the alternatives to select the preferred option(s).
In this particular Case Study, the preferred alternative that was selected had the lowest-cost as identified by the LCC analysis and the best design and operational impacts to the airport as identified in the Qualitative Assessment Matrix.
## Table C-9
### TERMINAL 1, ALTERNATIVE 1, LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital Cost</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment purchase</td>
<td>$4,845,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment installation</td>
<td>1,700,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment refurbishment</td>
<td>$1,360,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment replacement</td>
<td>850,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS removal</td>
<td>340,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required infrastructure modifications to the building and BHS</td>
<td>$5,950,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O&amp;M Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment maintenance</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
<td>$484,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staffing Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA screener and supervisor (a)</td>
<td>1,310,074</td>
<td>1,310,074</td>
<td>1,310,074</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
<td>1,358,147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff associated with clearing bag jams or portering bags (if not included in O&amp;M costs described above)</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$5,950,000</td>
<td>$8,442,964</td>
<td>$2,382,464</td>
<td>$2,382,464</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
<td>$2,430,537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discounted Annual Costs</td>
<td>$5,950,000</td>
<td>$7,890,620</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
<td>$2,080,956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Value of Costs</td>
<td>$41,348,128</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Costs for TSA staffing are notional and may not reflect existing staffing estimates, unit costs, or policies.

Note: This example is based on a study that has been commissioned by the Port of Oakland, however, some costs estimates are derived from the BSIS Guidelines rather than the actual cost estimates developed by the Oakland study. These cost estimates do not necessarily reflect final results and conclusions for the study commissioned by the Port.
### Table C-10

**TERMINAL 1, ALTERNATIVE 2a, LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capital Cost</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment purchase</td>
<td>$2,450,000</td>
<td>$2,450,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment installation</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment refurbishment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$595,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O&amp;M Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment operating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental BHS maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(including additional maintenance personnel)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental BHS operating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staffing Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA screener and supervisor (a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff associated with clearing bag jams or portering bags (if not included in O&amp;M costs described above)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discounted Annual Costs</td>
<td>$4,550,000</td>
<td>$4,258,288</td>
<td>$4,296,322</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,201,668</td>
<td>$4,757,668</td>
<td>$4,620,668</td>
<td>$4,201,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
<td>$4,575,668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Value of Costs</td>
<td>$25,272,491</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Costs for TSA staffing are notional and may not reflect existing staffing estimates, unit costs, or policies.

Note: This example is based on a study that has been commissioned the Port of Oakland, however, some costs estimates are derived from the BSIS Guidelines rather than the actual cost estimates developed by the Oakland study. These cost estimates do not necessarily reflect final results and conclusions for the study commissioned by the Port.
## Table C-11

### TERMINAL 1, ALTERNATIVE 2b, LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capital Cost</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment purchase</td>
<td>$2,450,000</td>
<td>$2,450,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment installation</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment refurbishment</td>
<td>$ 95,000</td>
<td>$ 95,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment replacement</td>
<td>350,000</td>
<td>350,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS removal</td>
<td>140,000</td>
<td>140,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required infrastructure modifications to the building and BHS</td>
<td>$ 4,900,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>O&amp;M Costs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment maintenance</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
<td>$ 245,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental BHS operating</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Staffing Costs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA screener and supervisor (a)</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
<td>751,183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff associated with clearing bag jams or portering bags (if not included in O&amp;M costs described above)</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>$ 4,900,000</td>
<td>$4,162,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discounted Annual Costs</td>
<td>$ 4,900,000</td>
<td>$4,162,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
<td>$1,257,142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Value of Costs</td>
<td>$22,771,578</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Costs for TSA staffing are notional and may not reflect existing staffing estimates, unit costs, or policies.

Note: This example is based on a study that has been commissioned by the Port of Oakland, however, some costs estimates are derived from the BSIS Guidelines rather than the actual cost estimates developed by the Oakland study. These cost estimates do not necessarily reflect final results and conclusions for the study commissioned by the Port.
### Table C-12

**TERMINAL 1, ALTERNATIVE 3, LIFE CYCLE COST ANALYSIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital Cost</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment purchase</td>
<td>$2,450,000</td>
<td>$2,450,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment installation</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment refurbishment</td>
<td>$595,000</td>
<td>$595,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS removal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required infrastructure modifications to the building and BHS</td>
<td>$14,700,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O&amp;M Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment maintenance</td>
<td></td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
<td>$245,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening equipment operating</td>
<td></td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
<td>26,981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental BHS maintenance (including additional maintenance personnel)</td>
<td></td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td>231,280</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental BHS operating</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
<td>2,698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staffing Costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA screener and supervisor (a)</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td>$655,037</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff associated with clearing bag jams or portering bags (if not included in O&amp;M costs described above)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount Factor</td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>1.070</td>
<td>1.145</td>
<td>1.131</td>
<td>1.043</td>
<td>1.025</td>
<td>1.008</td>
<td>0.984</td>
<td>0.961</td>
<td>0.940</td>
<td>0.919</td>
<td>0.899</td>
<td>0.880</td>
<td>0.862</td>
<td>0.844</td>
<td>0.827</td>
<td>0.810</td>
<td>0.793</td>
<td>0.776</td>
<td>0.760</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Value of Costs</td>
<td>$31,577,852</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Costs for TSA staffing are notional and may not reflect existing staffing estimates, unit costs, or policies.

Note: This example is based on a study that has been commissioned by the Port of Oakland; however, some costs estimates are derived from the BSIS Guidelines rather than the actual cost estimates developed by the Oakland study. These cost estimates do not necessarily reflect final results and conclusions for the study commissioned by the Port.
Appendix D

CHECKED BAGGAGE INSPECTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

This appendix defines the minimum requirements that all checked baggage inspection systems shall meet. It consists of two parts:

- Appendix D1 contains design performance requirements (DPRs) for all checked baggage inspection systems.

- Appendix D2 contains commissioning and evaluation requirements and defines a suite of tests used to evaluate a checked baggage inspection system against the DPRs defined in Appendix D1.
Appendix D1

DESIGN PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

The Design Performance Requirements define the minimum performance requirements for a CBIS. The requirements in this appendix are provided in terms of performance criteria which must be satisfied before the CBIS design is approved for construction. The design performance requirements contained herein apply to all CBIS unless noted and are meant to be used when evaluating a CBIS during design, initial commissioning and follow-on testing.

D1.1  BHS CAPACITY REQUIREMENTS

The BHS capacity of the proposed CBIS shall be optimized for both current and future EDS technology, and shall not constrain the maximum potential capacity of the EDS technology. In determining the BHS capacity the following requirements are to be met:

D1.1.1  Main Lines Requirement

D1.1.1.1  All main lines delivering bags to a group of EDS machines and taking bags away from a group of EDS machines shall have a minimum throughput capacity of 1,800 bags per hour (BPH) per main line.

D1.1.1.2  The number of merges and diverts on any one main line shall be limited so as not to affect throughput capacity or the ability to maintain positive bag tracking. The CBIS shall meet the minimum throughput capacity of 1800 BPH per main line without jeopardizing positive bag tracking.

D1.1.1.3  When the screening throughput capacity of a group of EDS machines (excluding any redundant machines) exceeds the minimum main line throughput capacity of 1,800 BPH, additional main lines shall be added or the number of EDS machines within that group shall be reduced, unless the CBIS designer can validate that the main line throughput capacity exceeds 1,800 BPH and can meet the grouped EDS screening throughput capacity.

D1.1.2  Bag Spacing Requirement

D1.1.2.1  CBIS shall be optimized to deliver and obtain, prior to the entrance of each EDS machine, bag spacing to meet the requirements of the EDS technology; Bag spacing between bags shall be adjustable to meet the requirements of current EDS technology in use.
D1.1.3 Evaluation Assumptions

The following assumptions are to be used in determining BHS capacity:

D1.1.3.1 All of the systems and functional components of the proposed CBIS are operational.

D1.1.3.2 All grouped EDS machines utilized less any redundant machines, shall not exceed any mainline throughput capacity (See discussion of EDS equipment redundancy in Chapter 7).

D1.1.3.3 Legacy baggage handling systems shall not impact the performance of the new CBIS.

D1.1.3.4 The EDS throughput capacity on which the system was based shall be per the tables in Chapter 5. However, the CBIS design shall be optimized for current EDS screening equipment, and have the flexibility to meet the requirements of future higher volume constant flow EDS screening equipment of up to 100 feet per minute (FPM).

D1.1.3.5 The CBIS design must account for appropriate staffing required for OSR and CBRA processes (see Chapter 7 on calculating staffing required for OSR and CBRA).

D1.2 SCREENING THROUGHPUT CAPACITY REQUIREMENTS

D1.2.1 Actual Screening Throughput Requirement

The actual screening throughput capacity as tested per Appendix D2 shall be greater than or equal to the designed screening throughput capacity.

D1.2.2 Evaluation Assumptions

D1.2.2.1 The design throughput capacity is calculated as the product of: (a) the number of EDS machines provided (excluding any redundant machines) and (b) the average screening throughput capacity per EDS machine. For purposes of this evaluation, the average screening throughput capacity per EDS machine will be confirmed by the ILDT and shall meet or exceed the values given in Chapter 5. If the design can not meet the required screening throughput capacity, the project sponsor must justify the designed screening throughput capacity to TSA.

D1.2.2.2 The methodology for measuring the actual screening throughput capacity is provided in Appendix D2.
D1.3  BAG TIME IN SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

D1.3.1  95th Percentile Time in System Requirement

The bag time in system from insertion at the furthest load point, through the EDS screening to arrival at the Sortation lines that lead to the make-up area is 10 minutes or less for 95% of peak hour bags during normal operations averaged across at least 10 simulation runs. The time includes all screening time (i.e., including alarm resolution in the CBRA).

D1.3.2  Evaluation Assumptions

For purposes of this evaluation, normal operations will be interpreted to mean the following:

D1.3.2.1  All of the systems and functional components of the proposed CBIS are operational.

D1.3.2.2  All EDS machines that are not provided for redundancy/system reliability are utilized. (See discussion of EDS equipment redundancy in Chapter 7).

D1.3.2.3  Adequate staffing is provided for required OSR and CBRA processes.

D1.3.2.4  Legacy BHS components shall not negatively impact the CBIS bag time in system.

D1.4  OSR DECISION TIME REQUIREMENTS

D1.4.1  Travel Time Requirement

For those systems using OSR protocols (as opposed to machine decisions only), the system must allow a minimum of 45 seconds of travel time between the exit of the EDS and the final diversion point to CBRA. Bags shall not be held to obtain the required 45 seconds of OSR time.

Exception: Mini in-line systems or systems designed with manual removal points for use in normal operation are not required to meet the 45 seconds OSR time.

D1.5  BHS TRACKING ID REQUIREMENTS

D1.5.1  Primary ID Requirement

D1.5.1.1  The BHS tracking ID shall be the primary means of positive bag tracking.

D1.5.1.2  The BHS tracking ID shall be the ID that is transferred between the BHS and EDS equipment.
D1.5.2 Positive Bag Tracking Requirement

The CBIS is required to positively track each bag entering a tracking zone by assigning a unique BHS tracking ID number, and its progress tracked by monitoring the conveyor speeds, distances, routing events, and other information associated with its travel path through the zone. The CBIS shall be capable of tracking and handling bags during adverse event conditions that are typical of situations that occur in normal baggage handling systems.

All events and specific performance requirements listed below are based on the system detecting bags which are at or within the conveyance sizes listed within the BHS specification. Further, the events listed are a requirement of performance from the point where positive tracking is established through the EDS, into CBRA, and to the point where the bags are on a clear line proceeding to the baggage make-up area.

D1.5.2.1 “First in first out” (FIFO) tracking logic shall not be used.

D1.5.2.2 Lost in track bags shall be less than 0.5% of total bags in a 24 hour period for the system.

D1.5.2.3 Error Bags at CBRA

The acceptable error rate varies depending on whether the design includes a baggage reinsertion line (BRL). Error bags are all bags that arrive at CBRA that are not valid EDS OOG bags or are not valid non-clear bags with BHS tracking IDs.

D1.5.2.3.1 With a BRL the acceptable error rate at CBRA is 2% unknown and no greater than 3% total error bags.

D1.5.2.3.2 Without a BRL the acceptable error rate at CBRA is 1% unknown and no greater than 2% total error bags.

D1.5.2.4 At no time shall the system swap BHS Tracking IDs on bags or security screening decisions on bags.

D1.5.2.5 The CBIS shall be capable of detecting when any bag infringes on the tracking window of any other bag, as long as the bags are at or above the minimum conveyance size (minimum size bag is normally 9” to 12” – in no case shall the minimum bag be greater than 12”) specified in the BHS specification and the bag is not on top of, underneath of, or directly beside another bag. The CBIS shall be capable of detecting a bag that is leading edge to trailing edge or trailing edge to leading edge with another bag and route the bags appropriately.

D1.5.2.6 If the EDS is controlling the conveyors immediately before and after the EDS, the CBIS/EDS is still required to meet the same criteria for tracking as in any other tracking zone.
D1.5.2.7  Missing Bag: The CBIS shall be capable of detecting when a bag is missing from the system. The removal of any bag shall not cause any other bag to lose track or its security screening status.

D1.5.2.8  Delayed or Accelerated Bag: The CBIS shall be capable of detecting when a bag has been delayed or accelerated out of it’s tracking window (“lost in track”) by more than the minimum conveyable item identified in the BHS specifications. (minimum size bag is normally 9” to 12” – in no case shall the minimum bag be greater than 12”).

D1.5.2.8.1  Upstream of EDS (single bag): The CBIS shall reacquire the bag and continue tracking.

D1.5.2.8.2  Upstream of EDS (2 bags leading edge to trailing edge): The CBIS shall detect this and be able to prevent the bags from entering the EDS in this condition.

D1.5.2.8.3  Downstream of EDS (single bag): If already screened and downstream of the EDS, any security status assigned to the bag will no longer be considered valid and the bag shall be routed to the CBRA.

D1.5.2.8.4  Downstream of EDS (multiple bags): If multiple bags are involved and tracking windows have been infringed, then the CBIS shall be capable of detecting this and route the bags to the CBRA.

D1.5.2.9  Added Bag: The CBIS shall be capable of detecting when a bag has been added to the tracking zone as long as that bag is added anywhere other than on top of, underneath, or directly beside another bag. The system shall be capable of detecting the minimum size bag, as identified in the BHS specifications (minimum size bag is normally 9” to 12” – in no case shall the minimum bag be greater than 12”), which has been added touching the leading edge or trailing edge of another bag.

D1.5.2.9.1  Upstream of EDS (single bag): The CBIS shall reacquire the bag and continue tracking.

D1.5.2.9.2  Upstream of EDS (2 bags leading edge to trailing edge): The CBIS shall detect this and be able to prevent the bags from entering the EDS in this condition.

D1.5.2.9.3  Downstream of EDS: If the addition occurs downstream of the EDS and only the added bag itself is affected (added bag does not infringe on the tracking window of another bag) then the added bag shall be routed to the CBRA.
D1.5.2.9.4 Downstream of EDS: If the addition occurs downstream of the EDS and the added bag infringes on the tracking window of another bag, then the CBIS shall be capable of detecting this and route the bags to the CBRA.

D1.5.2.10 E-Stop Conditions: The system shall maintain tracking and security statuses of all bags that have been screened by the EDS and the security decision transmitted from the EDS to the BHS prior to the activation of either a BHS or EDS E-stop. Any bag within or downstream of the EDS that does not have a security screening decision at or upon recovery from an E-stop condition shall be routed to the CBRA. The EDS shall recover from the E-stop condition per published criteria of the EDS vendor and the BHS shall recover per established E-stop recovery procedures defined in the BHS specifications.

D1.5.2.11 Use of Real-Time Belt Speeds: The CBIS shall be designed and have installed PECs in combination with belt tachometers, star wheels, or encoders, to minimize tracking errors in the system.

D1.5.2.11.1 Tachometers/Star Wheels/Encoders: All tracking zones shall have tachometers, star wheels, and encoders installed.

D1.5.2.11.2 Placement of Photoelectric Cells: Photoelectric cells (PECs) shall be located 1” to 2” above the conveyor belt. The PECs shall be located at the proper distance from the conveyor head and/or tail to maintain positive bag tracking and to stop a bag as close as possible to the head of a stopped conveyor without that bag proceeding on to the tail of the next downstream conveyor. The use of PLC programming time delays for PECs shall not be allowed as an alternative to achieving the proper placement distance of PECs from the conveyor leading edge and/or trailing edge. Plexiglas guards shall not be used for PECs.

D1.6 BAG TAG IDENTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

D1.6.1 Bag Tag ID Requirement

The CBIS must be designed with the flexibility to incorporate bag tag identification, whether immediately implemented or for future implementation in the case that TSA requires differential screening based on selectee status. The ILDT must document location, technology, means and methods of future bag tag identification, if the CBIS is designed without bag tag identification. Bag Tag Identification shall not be the primary means and/or method utilized for positive bag tracking.

D1.6.2 Read Rate Requirement

Read rates shall be no less than 99% during controlled testing, and 95% for laser arrays and 99% for RFID during normal operations.
**D1.7 CONVEYOR SPEED CONTROL REQUIREMENTS**

**D1.7.1 Dynamic Braking Requirement**

Dynamic braking is required for all conveyors within the tracking zones. VFDs with dynamic braking or clutch brake assemblies shall be used on all conveyors requiring frequent stopping and starting in the tracked zones. VFDs are required on all conveyors at the following locations:

- Diverts
- Merges
- Take-away merges
- All of the conveyors on the individual EDS lines (i.e., from the divert on to the individual EDS line to the merges at both the clear line and the alarm line)

All VFDs shall be supplied with appropriately sized brake resistors to ensure proper belt stoppage and shall be capable of operating at a minimum of two different speeds. Each VFD shall be mounted at the conveyor that it is controlling, not in a centralized motor control panel.

**D1.7.2 Conveyor Speed Transition Requirements**

Conveyor speed transitions shall be set to ensure conformity with the positive bag tracking requirements defined in section D1.5.2.

**D1.8 CONVEYOR SLOPES**

The CBIS shall be designed with incline and decline angles no greater than 18 degrees in non-tracking zones (i.e., zones where bags are not positively tracked) and incline and decline angles no greater than 15 degrees in tracking zones (i.e., zones where bags are positively tracked).

**D1.9 DIVERT AND MERGE REQUIREMENTS**

**D1.9.1 Static Ploughs and Roller Diverters Requirement**

Static ploughs and roller diverters shall not be used.

**D1.9.2 Directly Opposing Diverters Requirement**

Directly opposing diverters shall not be used.
D1.9.3 Pusher Requirement

Pushers shall be not used in the CBIS until the bags have been cleared, and are being pushed to a Clear line or are on a post-EDS main line proceeding to make-up areas for sortation.

D1.9.4 Improper and Unnecessary Merging/Diverting

Improper merging/diverting and the incidence of multiple conveyor merge/divert points within a short distance on an individual line increases the number of mistracked bags and reduces the overall CBIS throughput. Designers shall consider incorporating separate conveyors when system throughput and/or bag tracking would be negatively impacted by excessive merges/diverts on any given line.

D1.9.5 90-Degree Merges/Diverts

The application of this feature in system design should take into consideration belt speeds and volume of bags being merged. Without considering these factors bags traveling through 90-degree merges/diverts are more likely to result in jams and mistracking losses than bags traveling through 45-degree merges/diverts. When employed, proper placement of corner wheels or rollers on 90-degree merges, and 45-degree pie sections on 90-degree diverts can somewhat reduce the risk of jams. The use of 90-degree merges/diverts shall not negatively impact system throughput, bag orientation and/or bag tacking.

D1.9.6 Separation by Bag Status Requirement

Bags exiting each EDS machine shall be separated by their clear or non-clear screening status, for merging onto the post-EDS Main line and OSR line, as soon as possible, but no sooner than 15 feet outside of the EDS machine. (The clear/non-clear separation point shall be a minimum of 15 feet measured from the discharge end of the exit tunnel of the EDS machine.) Bags that receive a “Clear” status while on the OSR line shall be separated at the Level 2 decision point to a post-EDS Main line, while the remaining non-clear bags are transported on the CBRA line.

Exception: Mini in-line systems or systems designed with manual removal points for use in normal operation are not required to meet the 15 foot separation point requirements.

D1.9.7 Commingling of Clear and Non-Clear Bags Requirement

After clear and non-clear bags have been separated (see D1.9.6 above), they shall not be commingled.
D1.10  CONVEYABLE ITEMS REQUIREMENTS

Items that can be conveyed by the CBIS shall be specified (weight, dimensions, etc.) by the CBIS designer. Tubs shall be used for each irregular shaped, light, or small item when being processed through the CBIS to enhance the ability to maintain positive tracking and minimize bag jams.

D1.10.1 Oversize Bags Requirement

The CBIS shall be designed to either transport oversize bags to be measured by a BMA and then diverted to an oversize screening area or have a separate oversize line for handling these bags.

Oversize bags are bags that have been specified by the CBIS designer to be too large to be transported by the BHS. If oversize bags are inducted into the system jams will occur. BMAs can be used to measure for oversize bags and redirect these bags to conveyors that are capable of handling them.

D1.10.2 Out-of-Gauge (OOG) Bags Requirement

The CBIS shall be designed to transport OOG bags to the CBRA or a separate OOG screening area.

OOG bags are bags that can be transported by the BHS, but are too large to fit through or be screened properly by the EDS machines. Locating baggage measurement arrays (BMAs) prior to EDS machines to identify and redirect out-of-gauge bags to other screening areas is required if these bags are being inducted into the system. If out-of-gauge bags are inducted into the system and not diverted prior to the EDS machines, jams will occur at the EDS machines.

D1.11 FAIL SAFE OPERATION REQUIREMENTS

The Fail Safe function shall be activated by less than 0.5% of the total bag volume, measured by the number of individual bags tripping the fail safe. In case of a fail safe event, the BHS shall identify non-clear bags and perform one of the following actions:

- Halt the conveyor that has the fail safe detection as well as the next downstream conveyor and notify TSA of the event; or
- Automatically route the bag off of the clear line to a non-clear line; or
- Automatically route the bag to a secure location and notify TSA of its presence so that it can be retrieved.

D1.12 IMAGE QUALITY (IQ) TEST REQUIREMENTS

The CBIS shall have specific controls built into the system to:
• Stop the normal flow of bags into the EDS without losing track of bags already in the system.

• Allow the IQ test bag to be placed safely and properly onto the conveyor immediately upstream of the EDS. The sideguard height shall be no greater than 4” on both sides of this conveyor.

• Restart the conveyor to feed the IQ test bag into the EDS

• Stop the IQ test bag on the first conveyor immediately downstream of the EDS, to allow removal of the IQ test bag. The sideguard height shall be no greater than 4” on both sides of this conveyor.

• Allow repeat IQ tests as necessary.

• Return the system to normal screening operations.

All of the above shall be supported without requiring a shutdown and restart of the CBIS from an MCP or other location.

D1.13 BAG ORIENTATION/POSITIONING REQUIREMENTS

CBIS designs shall specify the method in which proper bag orientation/positioning is achieved and maintained until the bag has been screened by an EDS and is on a clear line. Bag orientation shall be maintained through merges and diverts.

The effective application of bag orientation/positioning devices are accomplished by the proper application of static deflectors and belt type to nudge bags or tubs off of side walls to improve system throughput prior to baggage induction to EDS equipment, automatic tag readers (ATRs), or BMAs. In order for these static deflectors to work efficiently and effectively the type of conveyor belt under the static deflectors becomes critical. A low coefficient of friction belt is required.

D1.14 BAG JAM RATE REQUIREMENTS

The maximum acceptable bag jam event rate is 1%. This is calculated by taking the total number of bag jam events divided by the total number of bags in a 24 hour period. No more than 3 bags real or virtual will be involved in any given bag jam event. CBIS designs shall include measures to facilitate the quick and effective clearing of any bag jams.

D1.15 BHS DISPLAYS REQUIREMENTS

BHS graphic status displays shall be utilized on all incoming reconciliation line removal points and at all CBRA ETD screening stations. BHS graphic status displays at the CBRA shall include at a minimum visual indication of the BHS bag ID number, EDS machine number, and bag screening status. At a minimum the following screening statuses will be displayed for all bags arriving at the CBRA: suspect, clear, unknown, no decision/pending decision, lost in tracking, oversize, and out-of-gauge.
D1.16 ALARMED BAG IMAGES REQUIREMENTS

Duplicate images at CBRA are only possible if the CBIS has a BRL at the CBRA and bag images are not reconciled. To alleviate duplicate images at CBRA the TSOs and the CBIS must reconcile “unknown” bags that arrive at CBRA with images prior to reinserting the bag at the BRL.

D1.17 REINSERTION REQUIREMENTS

D1.17.1 Reinsertion of Cleared Bags Requirement

Reinsertion of cleared bags shall only occur downstream of the associated decision point.

D1.17.2 Reinsertion of Non-Cleared Bags Requirement

Reinsertion of non-cleared bags shall only occur upstream of the associated EDS machines.

D1.17.3 Reinsertion with Bag Tag Identification Requirement

If bag tag identification (i.e. optical, RFID, etc.) is being utilized then the bag should be reinserted upstream of the device being utilized for bag tag identification (i.e. ATR, RFID reader, etc.).

D1.18 PURGE LINE REQUIREMENTS

The CBIS shall be designed with a purge line that connects the alarm line beyond the Level 2 decision point to the main line that feeds the individual EDS lines, and meets the following minimum criteria.

- The system shall maintain positive track of the purged bags.
- The purge line shall not be used as a recirculation line for lost in track/unknown bags.

D1.19 RECIRCULATION REQUIREMENTS

CBIS shall not be designed with recirculation loops, either pre-EDS screening or post-EDS screening.

D1.20 POWER TURNS AFTER EDS

Power turns immediately following the EDS exit should be avoided when designing the CBIS; however, if they are utilized in this location positive bag tracking must be maintained.
D1.21 NON-POWERED ROLLERS REQUIREMENTS

Non-powered rollers shall not be used in tracking zones in the CBIS.

D1.22 EDS MACHINE ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

D1.22.1 Access Requirement

CBIS designers shall provide sufficient access to the EDS machines for the following:

- Operations and maintenance
- Removal
- Replacement
- Equipment Upgrades

At a minimum the design shall meet clearance requirements for each EDS machine as defined by the EDS OEM.

D1.22.2 Access Drawings and Description Requirement

CBIS designers shall provide drawings and a description of the EDS machines removal route as well as all other operations and maintenance related access.

D1.22.3 Quick Disconnect Requirement

CBIS designers shall identify the appropriate number of queues immediately before and after the EDS machine that will be on castors and have mechanical and electrical quick disconnects which will allow for easy access to the EDS machines for maintenance, removal and/or replacement.

D1.23 CBIS REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

D1.23.1 Reporting Frequency Requirement

The CBIS reporting system shall be capable of providing data in real time (±30 seconds) and in hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, annually, and manually entered time periods.

D1.23.2 Reporting Detail Requirement

The CBIS reporting system shall be capable of providing detailed data by baggage ID number, CBRA ETD screening station, and EDS machine.
**D1.23.3 Required Reporting Capabilities**

The reporting system shall be capable of providing the following minimal features and reports:

**D1.23.3.1 Detail Reporting Requirements**

The system shall be capable of reporting the detailed data by the following items:

- **Bag Data**
  - Bag Tag Number (with ATR/RFID installed)
  - Time Stamped at BMA
  - BHS Tracking ID Number for each bag (Shared by BHS and EDS machine)
  - Bag Type (Oversize, OOG, in-spec)
  - Screened by EDS Machine Serial Number
  - Time Stamped when entering into the EDS machine or Time Stamped when OOG bags are diverted to OOG Line
  - Level 1 Screening Status
  - Time Stamped at Level 1 Screening Decision
  - Level 2 Screening Status
  - Time Stamped at Level 2 Screening Decision. Note: Not all EDS machines have the capability to time stamp at both Level 1 and level 2 decisions – Confirm with EDS OEM.
  - Time Stamped when delivered to CBRA Queue Conveyor
  - Time Stamped when removed from CBRA Queue Conveyor
  - CBRA ETD Screening Station Number
  - Time Stamped when Resolved by CBRA Screening Station

- **BHS Faults**
  - Fault Type (Note: a Fault is defined as a “cause” such as lost in track, motor overload, PEC failure, encoder failure, etc.)
  - Fault Location
– Fault Time
– Fault Time Cleared
– Total Fault Time

• BHS Events
  – Event Type (Note: an Event is defined as the “effect” of a fault such as re-establish tracking, fail-safe, jams, etc. or the “effect” of human interaction in the system such as via HMI or control station – e.g., pushing an e-stop)
  – Event Location
  – Event Time
  – Total Event Time

• EDS Statistics (The following statistics shall be considered SSI and treated accordingly.)
  – Number of Bags Alarmed by Specific EDS Machine
  – Number of Bags Cleared by Specific EDS Machine
  – EDS Machine Faults (if known)
  – EDS Machine Hours of Operation
  – Start Time of Operation
  – Start Time of Fault
  – End Time of Fault
  – End Time of Operation

• BMA Statistics
  – Total Number of Bags through the BMA
  – Total Number of Oversize Bags
  – Total Number of OOG Bags

• System Baggage Volumes
  – By Input Conveyors
- Ticket Counter Conveyors
- Curbside Conveyors
- Oversize Conveyors
  - By Makeup Device
    - Total Bags to Makeup Area
    - Total Bags to Oversize Make-up Area
  - By Screening Area
    - EDS Machine
    - CBRA Area
    - CBRA Station
- OSR Statistics (The following statistics shall be considered SSI and treated accordingly.)
  - Total Number of Bags through OSR
  - Total Number of Bags through OSR by EDS Machine
  - Total Number of Bags Cleared by OSR
  - Average Time to Clear Bag by OSR
- CBRA Area Statistics (The following statistics shall be considered SSI and treated accordingly.)
  - Total Number of Bags Received in CBRA
  - Total Number of Bags Cleared by CBRA
  - Total Number of Bags per CBRA ETD Screening Station
  - Bag Time In/Out at each CBRA ETD Screening Station
  - Number and Type of Alarmed Objects per bag
- Tracking Statistics
  - Total Number of Bags in Track
  - Total Number of Bags Lost in Track
– % of Total Bags Lost in Track
– Count of Lost in Track at each device location

• Time-in-System Statistics
  – Minimum/Maximum Time Bag was in System (Measured from point positive bag tracking is established to induction on to a Clear line)
  – Average Time Bag was in System
  – Average Time Bag was in System by Screening Level

**D1.23.3.2 Daily Report Requirement**

At a minimum the following daily reports in the format shown shall be provided to the local TSA:

• Daily CBIS Summary Report
• Daily CBIS Bag Volume Report
• Daily CBIS Screening Report
• Daily CBIS System Reliability Report

**D1.23.3.3 Sensitive Information Released only to TSA**

The Screening Alarm % and Time to Decision in Table D1-1 shall only be released to the TSA.

The EDS, OSR, and ETD Alarm Rates and Time to Decision in Table D1-3 shall only be released to the TSA.
### Table D1-1

**DAILY CBIS SUMMARY REPORT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report Type</th>
<th>Daily</th>
<th>Report Run Date</th>
<th>[Date/time]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total CBIS Baggage Throughput</th>
<th>0 bags</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Percent CBIS Reliability</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Time Bag in CBIS</td>
<td>0.0 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Bag Volume

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In-Gauge</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>Out-of-Gauge</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>Oversize</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of bags</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage of Total Bag Volume</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Screening

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 1: EDS</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>Level 2: OSR</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>Level 3: CBRA</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of bags processed</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm Rate %</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time to Decision (Seconds)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3 CBIS Reliability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total Available Run Time</th>
<th>0:00:00</th>
<th>Down Time</th>
<th>0:00:00</th>
<th>Percent CBIS Reliability</th>
<th>0.00%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### 4 CBIS Faults/Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Down Time</th>
<th>Average Time to Clear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Faults</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lost in Track</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jams</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail Safe</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Faults/Events</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 5 Bag Time in CBIS (Minutes)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Maximum</th>
<th>Average</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table D1-2
DAILY CBIS BAG VOLUME REPORT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report Type</th>
<th>Daily From</th>
<th>Daily To</th>
<th>Report Run Date</th>
<th>[Date/time]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Input Conveyors</td>
<td>Number of Bags</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Sizing</td>
<td>Number of Bags</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-Gauge</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out-of-Gauge</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oversize</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table D1-3

**DAILY CBIS SCREENING REPORT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screening Area</th>
<th>Number of Bags</th>
<th>Percent of Total</th>
<th>Alarm Rate</th>
<th>Time to Decision (Secs.)</th>
<th>Down Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Bags post BMA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS-1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS-3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS-4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Bags through EDS</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Bags through OSR</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETD Screening Station-8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Bags through ETD</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Bags to TCU</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table D1-4

**DAILY CBIS SYSTEM RELIABILITY REPORT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report Type</th>
<th>Daily</th>
<th>Report Run Date</th>
<th>[Date/time]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>[Date/time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>[Date/time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Faults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fault Description</th>
<th>Count</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Min</th>
<th>Max</th>
<th>Average</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MC/IB4-09 (Motor)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Motor Overload</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE/IB4-08B (Photoeye)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Lost in Track</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VFD/IB4-09 (VFD)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>VFD Fault</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Description</th>
<th>Count</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Min</th>
<th>Max</th>
<th>Average</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS/CL2-01D (Control Station)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>EStop</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE/IB4-08B (Photoeye)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Fail Safe</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE/IB4-09B (Photoeye)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Jam</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
<td>0:00:00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix D2

COMMISSIONING & EVALUATION REQUIREMENTS

D2.1 INTRODUCTION

The Commissioning & Evaluation Requirements presents a top level suite of tests used to evaluate a CBIS against the Design Performance Requirements (DPRs) established in Appendix D1. Each individual CBIS being Commissioned or Evaluated by or on behalf of TSA will be tested per a Site Specific Test Plan (SSTP) developed against this top level suite of tests. Since each CBIS is unique, the individual tests contained in the SSTP may be a subset of this overall suite and/or may contain additional or modified tests as needed to evaluate the individual CBIS against the DPRs.

The tests contained herein apply to all CBIS (Low, Medium and High Volume), and associated Baggage Handling Systems (BHSs), including the delivery to and the takeaway from the screening system unless specifically stated otherwise.

In addition to the specific tests contained in this Appendix, the individual SSTPs shall contain requirements to verify that the reporting capabilities defined in Sections D1.23 have been provided and that the reports are accurate.

TSA and/or the TSA’s independent test and evaluation contractor will verify that the tests contained in the SSTP and this Appendix have been met either by witnessing testing performed by the entity responsible for the system’s construction or by performing an independent test of the system.

The testing suite is divided into three parts:

1. Introductory Testing
2. Detailed Testing
3. System-wide Testing
D2.2 INTRODUCTORY TESTING

Introductory tests are performed on each individual spur line containing an EDS. At a minimum, bags are inducted from the Point of Acquisition of Tracking through the EDS to the point(s) of diversion to the Clear or outbound lines and into the CBRA, “the Security Tracking Zone” (STZ). When possible, bags should be inducted from their natural point(s) of origin.

D2.2.1 Mixed Bag Line Test

Purpose: This test is conducted to verify basic operation of the CBIS and to prove that BHS tracking is able to handle multiple bags with differing decisions. It is also used to observe general operation of the system to better allow application of subsequent tests against observed system behavior.

Procedure: A minimum of 40 bags (10 Suspect and 30 Clear) enter the EDS through the BHS. The bags’ IDs and EDS decisions are recorded at the EDS console, and the final disposition of the bags is recorded at CBRA. Bag statuses may also be recorded at the Level 1 and/or Level 2 and/or recirculation/bypass decision point(s). More than 40 bags may be processed based on the complexity of the system.

Conclusion: At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3 DETAILED TESTING

Detailed tests are performed on each individual spur line containing an EDS. Further, detailed tests are performed on multiple logical “tracking zones” on each spur, mainline and other lines, as long as tracking exists or can be affected. These tracking zones are defined as follows:

Zone 1: Point of acquisition of tracking to bag hand-off to EDS.
Zone 2: Bag hand-off to EDS and the Level 1 Clear/Suspect diversion.
Zone 3: Between the Level 1 and Level 2 Clear/Suspect diversion.
Zone 4: Between the final Diversion Point and CBRA.

As in Basic testing, bags are inducted from the Point of Acquisition of Tracking through the EDS to the point(s) of diversion to the Clear or outbound lines and into the CBRA, the STZ. When possible, bags should be inducted from their natural point(s) of origin.

For specific tests, the induction and testing zones may be less than the above and are noted as such in the Purpose and/or Procedure sections.
D2.3.1 Removed Bag Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to ensure that the BHS handles bags securely when one or more bags are removed from the system.

**Procedure:** A series of at least 10 bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) enters the EDS through the BHS. The bags’ IDs and EDS decisions are recorded at the EDS console, and the final disposition of the bags is recorded at CBRA. Bag statuses may also be recorded as necessary at other decision/diversion points. One or two bags are removed from the baggage stream to simulate missing bags. This test shall be run in each tracking zone on each line.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3.2 Delayed and Accelerated Bag Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to ensure that the BHS handles bags securely when one or more bags are delayed or accelerated outside their tracking window(s).

**Procedure:** A series of at least 10 bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) enters the EDS through the BHS. The bags’ IDs and EDS decisions are recorded at the EDS console, and the final disposition of the bags is recorded at CBRA. Bag statuses may also be recorded as necessary at other decision/diversion points.

Within each tracking zone of each EDS line, two non-consecutive bags are held back (delayed test) or accelerated (accelerated test) within the baggage stream to simulate bags that have slid outside of their tracking windows. In each test, one bag should be moved such that it does not interfere with the tracking window of any other bag, while the other bag should be moved such that it does interfere with the tracking window of another bag.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5  BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6  Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3.3 Added Bag Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to ensure that the BHS handles bags securely when one or more bags are added to the system.

**Procedure:** A series of at least 10 bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) enters the EDS through the BHS. The bags’ IDs and EDS decisions are recorded at the EDS console, and the final disposition of the bags is recorded at CBRA. Bag statuses may also be recorded as necessary at other decision/diversion points.

Within each tracking zone of each EDS line, two non-consecutive bags are added to the baggage stream to simulate added bags. One bag should be added such that it does not interfere with the tracking window of any other bag, while the other bag should be added such that it does interfere with the tracking window of another bag (the bag can be between bags or abutting another bag head to tail, but shall not be added beside, beneath, or on top of another bag).

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3.4 E-Stop Test

**Purpose:** This procedure tests the ability of the EDS and BHS to activate and recover from E-Stops, and to maintain tracking of bags during E-Stop conditions. This test is conducted for both EDS and BHS E-Stops.

**Procedure:** For the EDS E-Stop Test, a series of at least 10 bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) is sent to the EDS through the BHS. Once bags are in a position such that there are bags leaving, entering, and within the EDS, an EDS E-Stop is activated. The EDS must immediately disable its X-rays and the EDS conveyors should proceed to stop. As an operational safety precaution, adjacent BHS conveyors, including at least the entrance and exit BHS queue conveyors, should also immediately stop. The BHS should recognize the E-Stop, and halt any further bags from being sent to the EDS.

The BHS E-Stop Test sends a series of at least 10 bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) to the EDS through the BHS. Once bags are in a position such that there are bags leaving, entering, and within the EDS, a BHS E-Stop is pressed. The EDS should recognize the E-Stop, and halt additional bags from being sent to the BHS. Further, the system should not permit bags on EDS conveyors to be forced forward onto stopped BHS conveyors.

This test is conducted for each EDS line.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3.5 Halt/Fail-Safe Test

**Purpose:** The purpose of this test is to ensure that the system does not pass any Non-Clear or unscreened bag to the outbound/sortation system. In addition, this test verifies that TSA is immediately notified of a Fail-Safe event, allowing an appropriate response.

**Procedure:** The test is conducted with bags flowing normally through the CBIS in sufficient quantity to have bags present from the EDS output through the Clear/Suspect Bag diversion point(s). A Suspect and/or mis-tracked bag is manually forced onto the outbound/sortation line (while observing all safety precautions). This may need to be done by blocking the Fail-Safe photo-eye manually rather than by forcing a bag to do so. The system should either, depending on design and programming:

- Recognize the condition as a Non-Clear bag on the Clear line
- or -
- Recognize that the Non-Clear bag did not pass the photo-eye programmed for fail-safe detection on the conveyor leading to the CBRA.
- and -
- Audible and/or visual Fail-Safe alarms should be activated in whatever location(s) will best allow TSA to respond to the event.

The CBIS behavior when the Fail-Safe is activated shall be recorded, including methods of Fail-Safe activation, and type and location of audible and visual Fail-Safe indications.

This test is conducted for each EDS line and at each point on each line where Clear bags are separated from non-Clear bags.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3.6 Travel Time/OSR Test

**Purpose:** The Travel Time/OSR Test is performed to ensure that sufficient conveyor travel distances are available for the use of OSR protocols.

**Procedure:** Screen a Suspect bag through the EDS and issue a Suspect decision for that bag. In the case where there are multiple divert points, the screening decision should be withheld until the bag passes all but the last diversion opportunity. Measure the length of time between when the bag exits the EDS and when it reaches the final decision/diversion point photo-eye.

This test is conducted for each EDS line.

**Conclusion:** The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

D1.4 OSR Decision Time Requirements

Note: This test does not apply to systems designed with Manual Removal In-Line Decision Points.
D2.3.7 Over-Height Bag Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to ensure that the CBIS recognizes over-height baggage and prevents it from entering any EDS.

**Procedure:** The Over-Height Bag Test is conducted as follows:

Record the height at which bags will activate the over-height detector.

Ensure that this setting is equal to or less than the maximum bag height for the EDS in question.

Introduce a stream of bags upstream of both the point of acquisition of tracking and upstream of the device used to measure the bag dimensions. Bags shall be both just above and just below this height.

This test is conducted at each location in the CBIS where Over-Height Detection is provided.

**Conclusion:** Record if the system properly detects OH bags and prevents them from entering the EDS. Also, record if any non-OH bags are detected in error as OH. At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements

Note: Mini In-Line Systems as defined in the BSIS are not required to have OH Detection. However, if OH detection is provided, the test applies.
D2.3.8 Over-Width Bag Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to ensure that the CBIS recognizes over-width (OW) baggage and prevents it from entering any EDS.

**Procedure:** The Over-Width Bag Test is conducted as follows:

Record the width at which bags will activate the OW detector.

Ensure that this setting is equal to or less than the maximum bag width for the EDS in question.

Introduce a stream of bags upstream of both the point of acquisition of tracking and upstream of the device used to measure the bag dimensions. Bags shall be both just above and just below this width.

This test is conducted at each location in the CBIS where OW detection is provided.

**Conclusion:** Record if the system properly detects OW bags and prevents them from entering the EDS. Also, record if any non-OW bags are detected in error as OW. At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements

**Note:** Mini In-Line Systems as defined in the BSIS are not required to have OW detection. However, if OW detection is provided, then the test applies.
D2.3.9 Over-Length Bag Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to ensure that the CBIS recognizes over-length (OL) baggage and prevents it from entering any EDS.

**Procedure:** The Over-Length Bag Test is conducted as follows:

Record the length at which bags will activate the OL detector.

Ensure that this setting is equal to or less than the maximum bag length for the EDS in question.

Introduce a stream of bags upstream of both the point of acquisition of tracking and upstream of the device used to measure the bag dimensions. Bags shall be both just above and just below this length.

This test is conducted at each location in the CBIS where OL detection is provided.

**Conclusion:** Record if the system properly detects OL bags and prevents them from entering the EDS. Also, record if any non-OL bags are detected in error as OL. At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements

Note: Mini In-Line Systems as defined in the BSIS are not required to implement OL detection. However, if OL detection is provided, then the test applies.
### D2.3.10 Modes of Operation Test

**Purpose:** This test is conducted to evaluate the ability of the CBIS to support secure operations in all integrated modes of operation allowed by the EDS unless specifically documented otherwise in the design and construction documents and approved as such by TSA.

**Procedure:** The Modes of Operation Test is conducted as follows:

1. Record the mode in which the system is normally designed to operate (Hold Outside or Hold Inside, other), place the system in the Normal Operating Mode.
2. Process no fewer than ten bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) and record the results (Phase 1).
3. Place the system in the alternate mode (using available EDS/BHS controls).
4. Process no fewer than ten bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) and record the results (Phase 2).
5. Place the system back in the original mode of operation (using available EDS/BHS controls).
6. Process no fewer than ten bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect) and record the results (Phase 3).

This test is conducted on each EDS line.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. Any mode of operation not supported in a secure manner shall be documented and reported to local TSA and CTO as a mode of operation not to be used during live operations. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

- D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
- D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
- D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
- D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
- D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
- D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
- D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.3.11 IQ Functionality Test

Purpose: This test is conducted to evaluate the CBIS’s ability to perform daily and shift change Image Quality (IQ) Tests.

Procedure: Conduct the following steps:

Record the specific steps taken to prepare the BHS for insertion of the EDS IQ test bag.

Begin to process no fewer than ten bags (7 Clear and 3 Suspect).

While these bags are entering, leaving, and within the EDS, using available EDS/BHS controls, place the system in the IQ Test mode and record the results (Phase 1).

Conduct no fewer than three IQ Tests and record the results (Phase 2).

Return the system to its normal mode of operation.

Complete the processing of the original ten bags and record the results (Phase 3).

This test is conducted on each EDS line.

Conclusion: Report any non-secure handling of the IQ Bag or other test bags. Report any faults or system behavior that requires BHS or EDS restarts. At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

D1.5 BHS Tracking ID Requirements
D1.6 Bag Tag Identification Requirements
D1.10 Conveyable Items Requirements
D1.11 Fail Safe Operation Requirements
D1.12 Image Quality (IQ) Test Requirements
D1.15 BHS Displays Requirements
D1.16 Alarmed Bag Images Requirements
D1.23 CBIS Reporting Requirements
D2.4 SYSTEM-WIDE TESTING

System-wide tests are performed on the entire system from natural point(s) of bag induction through the screening matrix and to the outbound system and CBRA. The entire system will be configured in the same way that the system is expected to be run in during normal daily operations.

D2.4.1 System Dieback Test

**Purpose:** This procedure tests the ability of the system to properly track and handle bags during system-wide conveyor halt conditions.

**Procedure:** Induct as many Suspect bags (or force Suspect decisions on bags) as needed to completely fill the CBRA line conveyors upstream through all primary and secondary decision points. Continue to fill the system with mixed decision bags until the conveyors cascade stop back to either just before the EDS or to the start of tracking. Once dieback has occurred, begin taking bags off the CBRA line conveyor and process the remaining bags normally.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

All Sections except:

- D1.2 Screening Throughput Requirement
- D1.3 Bag Time In System Requirements
D2.4.2 System Mixed Bag Test

**Purpose:** The System Mixed Bag Test demonstrates the ability of the CBIS to operate in a normal fashion under less than peak throughput conditions.

**Procedure:** If technically possible, and working with the EDS vendor, configure the EDS to save all bag images. In this way, when reconciling the test data, any CBRA anomalies can be more thoroughly investigated by examining the EDS and BHS data logs and all saved images.

Process a mix of bags (Suspect/Clear) with a certain percentage for Level 1 Alarm Rate with a certain percentage of Suspect Bags being cleared through simulated OSR (exact percentages are considered sensitive security information and can be requested from TSA). The induction rate should reflect normal operations in less than peak through-put conditions. The minimum amount of baggage inducted should be equivalent to 100 bags per EDS.

For High-Volume In-Line EDS, the test should be broken down into groupings of mainlines (usually no more than two High-Volume EDS per mainline) and the volume processed shall than be no less than 250 bags per EDS.

For partially integrated EDS, or for CBIS with in-line, manual removal decision points, the minimum number of bags processed through each EDS line will be 200 bags. This increase in baggage for Mini In-Line Systems is to increase the sample Rate because a Rate Test will not be performed on these lower volume systems.

The IDs and decisions for each bag will be recorded at the alarm resolution workstations, in the CBRA, and at any other available terminals, printers, and displays. On completion of the test, the datasheets from the workstations, decision point(s), and CBRA will be compared to evaluate baggage tracking.

During the test, personnel will not prevent bag jams from occurring. Only after bag jams occur will personnel clear the jams. The location of each bag jam will be recorded along with any observations that will help in reducing the jam rate.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

All Sections except:

D1.2 Screening Throughput Requirement
D2.4.3 Stress Test

**Purpose:** The Stress Test demonstrates the ability of the CBIS to operate under conditions at or approaching peak throughput rates.

**Procedure:** Induct bags at the Ticket Counter, Curbside, and InterLine Transfer lines (and any other input lines).

Process bags correctly through the CBIS such that:

1. Clear bags are sent directly to the outbound sortation system.
2. Suspect bags are sent directly to the CBRA, and once cleared, are sent to the outbound sortation system.
3. Faulted, mis-tracked, and errored bags are sent to the CBRA.

Induct baggage as fast as the system will allow while not violating system required minimum bag spacing.

The test will demonstrate the ability of all interconnected EDS screening lines to process bags simultaneously under high throughput rates. The minimum amount of baggage inducted should be equivalent to 100 bags per EDS except for systems built according to BSIS Guidelines Section 5.1.1 High-Volume In-Line EDS. For these high volume systems, the test should be broken down into groupings of main-lines (usually no more than two High-Volume EDS per mainline) and the volume processed shall than be no less than 250 bags per EDS.

If technically possible, and working with the EDS vendor, configure the CBIS to save all bag images. In this way, when reconciling the test data, any CBRA anomalies can be more thoroughly investigated by examining the EDS and BHS data logs and all saved images.

Using available inputs (e.g., ticket counters, curbside and transfer lines), induct a mix of bags (Suspect/Clear) as fast as the system will allow while not violating system required minimum bag spacing. Process a mix of bags (Suspect/Clear) with a certain percentage for Level 1 Alarm Rate with a certain percentage of Suspect Bags being cleared through simulated OSR (exact percentages are considered sensitive security information and can be requested from TSA). Should construction constraints not permit induction at the normal points of origin, then the Stress Test will be conducted when these constraints are lifted. For partially integrated EDS, or for CBIS with inline, manual removal decision points, the Stress Test will not be conducted.

The IDs and decisions for each bag will be recorded at the alarm resolution workstations in the CBRA, and at any other available terminals, printers, and
displays. On completion of the test, the datasheets from the workstations, decision point(s), and CBRA will be compared to evaluate baggage tracking. During the test, personnel will not prevent bag jams from occurring. Only after bag jams occur will personnel clear the jams. The location of each bag jam will be recorded along with any observations that will help in reducing the jam rate.

**Conclusion:** At the conclusion of testing, the screening status and bag IDs for all bags processed are compared against the EDS status and bag IDs. The performance of the system is then judged against the following DPR sections (See Appendix D1):

All DPR sections apply to the Stress Test.
Appendix E

EXAMPLE CONTINGENCY PLAN

This appendix provides an example of the contingency plan developed for the CBIS at Oakland International Airport’s Terminal 2. The contingency plan is intended to: (1) identify all likely scenarios for system or component failure that may be faced during operation of the CBIS, and (2) describe the protocols and procedures to be followed by BHS control, airlines, and TSA when these scenarios are in effect.

Source: Southwest Airlines (reproduced and reformatted with permission)
Appendix E

EXAMPLE CONTINGENCY PLAN

E.1 INTRODUCTION

The following sections comprise the contingency plan that was prepared for the in-line CBIS designed for Oakland International Airport’s Terminal 2. The system, which became operational in February 2006, is a medium speed in-line system with 4 GE CTX-9000’s and serves all flights by Southwest Airlines, the terminal’s sole airline tenant. Throughout the document, EDS machines are referred to as computerized tomography (CT) machines.

E.2 STANDBY POWER—OVERVIEW

In the event of a loss of utility power, the in-line explosives detection system (EDS) system is designed to operate on standby power, when available. In this instance, the system will operate in an alternate “Limited Operation” mode. During limited operation, the Transportation Security Administration (TSA)-furnished in-line EDS equipment must remain switched off. When utility power is restored, the equipment may only be restarted by TSA-assigned Field Service Engineer (FSE) staff per the protocols described below.

The Baggage Handling System (BHS) controls are furnished with an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the programming functions of the system for continued operation. The TSA-furnished Multiplexer (MUX) server is not furnished with UPS back-up and will require formal re-start by TSA / FSE. When the conveying system is operating in the Limited Operation mode, all bags will be diverted directly to explosives trace detection (ETD) for manual screening. Upon the loss of utility power, a signal shall be sent by the Power Management Control System (PMCS) to the Master Control Panel (MCP) area. The signal will indicate that standby power has become operational. After the in-line EDS system has been cleared, the BHS control system will be re-started by the BHS operator in the Limited Operation mode. When utility power is restored, the transition from standby power shall not be detectable. The Port shall notify the BHS operator when utility power has been fully restored. The BHS operator shall proceed to perform a controlled shut-down and re-start of the in-line EDS in full “Operation” mode. In the event of a power outage, the baggage system operator shall immediately contact TSA and the on-site FSE under contract to the TSA. The FSE shall throw the manual disconnects to each EDS to avoid short term power surges if power is restored. Haste is emphasized to avoid damage to CTs. The FSE shall be solely responsible for re-starting the CT MUX interface and the individual CTs once power is restored. The FSE shall notify the BHS operator when the MUX and CTs are available to support the renewed operation of the full in-line EDS.
Manual bag clearing procedures will be performed by Southwest Airlines (SWA) in conformance with SWA protocols and the protocols described below.

During power outages, the manual conveyance of outbound baggage will occur directly between the ticket lobby to the new ETD screening area through the security door and down the adjacent stair. From there, the bags will need to be manually conveyed to a TSA-designated holding area or alternate screening area (with access to power) where TSA manual screening can occur.

The startup procedure once utility power is restored shall be in conformance with the protocols documented below. The Port shall communicate to the BHS operator and SWA when full utility power has been restored and Port Equipment Systems (ESE) has closed the existing breakers at the substation above. Port Engineering Services (ES) typically operates with a 20-minute response time.

The BHS operator shall reciprocate communication with the Port, SWA, and TSA in advance of re-starting the system the in-line EDS.

E.3 OPERATIONAL PROTOCOLS AND PROCEDURES

The protocols and procedures for the handling of all likely scenarios that SWA operations, BHS control, and TSA staff will face during the operation of the in-line EDS are outlined below. The proper implementation of these protocols is critical to the successful operation of the system, the resolution of unplanned events, and the maintenance of optimal system throughput.

E.3.1 Treatment of Threat Bags When Positively Identified by TSA Staff

When TSA staff cannot clear an alarmed bag by following Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs), they shall contact the Airline Manager on Duty (MOD) and the designated airport Law Enforcement Officer (LEO) for resolution of the identified threat. The designated LEO assumes full responsibility for the alarmed bag. Locally, procedures typically involve immediate response by the Oakland Police K-9 unit. If additional support is required, the Alameda County Bomb Squad will respond. A Threat Containment Unit (TCU) is available on-site to assist in the removal of the threat bag. The Airport MOD and LEO shall be jointly responsible for formal notification of events to airline and airport staff as well as the general public.

E.3.2 Positively Identified Contraband or Undeclared Weaponry

When the TSA identifies contraband or undeclared weaponry during the SOP search, it shall immediately contact local LEOs and designated airline representatives. The custody of the bag is transferred to the designated LEO, who shall apply standard procedures for identifying and locating the owner of the bag in question and taking appropriate action.
E.3.3 Emergency Maintenance of TSA-Furnished Equipment

Notification and reporting procedures are described below.

- **Notification Procedures.** The EDS vendor FSE should be contacted for the maintenance and repair of TSA-furnished equipment. This equipment includes the CTs, MUX interface, on-screen resolution (OSR), Passive Threat Resolution Information (PTRI), and ETD equipment. Manual removal of baggage from within TSA-furnished CT equipment shall be performed by TSA staff only. Any modifications performed to the CT programming by TSA must be communicated immediately to BHS contractor for the period of one year and to the BHS operator thereafter.

- **Reporting Procedures.** TSA protocols exist for formal documentation of repairs and maintenance of TSA-furnished equipment. The Port and the BHS operator will also be notified by TSA.

E.3.4 BHS Alarm and Baggage Jam Resolution

The notification procedures, actions, and protocols and procedures to be undertaken in the event of a BHS alarm or baggage jam are described below.

- **Notification to SWA and TSA by BHS Operator.** The BHS operator has access to an electronic display of all system faults. When faults occur that have a significant impact on the operation of the in-line EDS, the BHS operator shall notify designated contacts to TSA and SWA as follows:
  - TSA Control Center: ____________________________
  - SWA: ____________________________
  - Customer Service Coordinator: ____________
  - Ramp Dispatcher: ________________
  - TSA FSE: ________________
• **Action by SWA and TSA.** Actions that must be taken by SWA and TSA are summarized below:

1. SWA will be responsible for clearing all conveyors outside the CTs. Detailed procedures for clearing jams can be found in the project O&M manual. General guidelines for clearing all jams are:
   -- All jams locations will be annunciated on the BHS system workstation located in the BHS control room.
   -- Before moving bags or climbing on the conveyor, press the Emergency Stop Pushbutton in the area of the jam.
   -- Clear the jammed baggage and ensure that the jammed photo sensor is clear.
   -- Reset the Emergency Stop Pushbutton that was pushed.
   -- Press the Reset/Restart Pushbutton

2. TSA will be responsible for clearing baggage from within the CTs. TSA protocols for CT-screened baggage are:
   -- Cleared bags shall be re-inducted on a clear line.
   -- Alarmed bags shall be re-inducted on a line for alarmed bags for conveyance direct to ETD.
   -- Any bag with unknown status shall be re-inducted on a line for alarmed bags for conveyance direct to ETD.

• **SWA Protocols and Reporting Procedures.** These protocols and reporting procedures are:

1. SWA has furnished baggage handling protocols and procedures that were attached to the contract for construction. Accommodation of the reporting system to maintain these protocols shall be accomplished by the BHS contractor and maintained by the BHS operator.

2. “Recurring Jam” resolution shall be handled as follows. The BHS contractor shall be responsible for the correction / resolution of recurring equipment or programming related jams or faults for a period of ___ days from the commencement of full operation.
E.3.5 Protocols for Bag Jams Related to TSA-Furnished Equipment

Corrections performed by TSA field personnel are as follows:

- TSA staff shall clear CTs when notified by the BHS operator in conformance with protocols described above.
- TSA protocols exist for formal written documentation by TSA staff of incidents affecting TSA-furnished equipment.
- The BHS operator shall formally notify TSA of jams or alarms produced by TSA-furnished equipment.

E.3.6 Protocols for Power Outages

Procedures for loss of power when standby power is available:

- **Operator Procedures.** In the event of power loss, the conveying system will shut down the BHS operator. TSA, SWA, and Port staff in the vicinity shall be aware by observation.
  1. The BHS operator shall immediately contact TSA.
  2. The BHS operator shall communicate any irregularities or observations of potential electrical problems to Port Aviation Operations.

- **TSA Procedures.** Upon receiving notification from the system operator, TSA staff shall:
  1. Throw the manual disconnects to each CT to avoid short term surges if power restarts unexpectedly. Haste is emphasized to avoid potential damage to CTs when power is re-started.
  2. TSA will subsequently contact the EDS FSE, under contract with TSA. The FSE will be solely responsible for re-starting the CT MUX interface. The FSE shall also be responsible for re-starting the individual CTs and shall notify the BHS operator when the MUX and CTs are available to support the renewed operation of the full in-line EDS.

- **Port Procedures.** Port ESE and/or Facilities will contact the operator with relevant information related to the status of utility power (cause of outage, estimated duration, limitations to available power).
• **Manual Baggage Clearing Procedure.** The BHS contractor shall produce a document that will itemize specific protocols for the system operator and the TSA for the safe, manual removal of bags from the inoperative conveying system by zone. These protocols will include the following:

1. *Short-term power outage baggage clearing procedures (when short-term status is confirmed by Port ESE staff).* When information is available to the operator that power will be restored in the short term, CT screened bags with unknown status shall be positioned for induction on a line dedicated for the conveyance of alarmed bags direct to ETD. Screened bags with known status shall remain in place on the conveying system, awaiting system re-start. BHS startup after a short-term (under 10 minutes) will be the same as a normal startup in the morning. The BHS control system is equipped with UPS units that will keep the BHS workstation and the control processor powered up. If no baggage has been moved during the power outage, all baggage should continue to be tracked and will proceed to the proper destination.

2. *Long-term power outage baggage clearing procedures (when long-term status is confirmed by Port ESE staff).* Baggage clearing procedures shall include the removal and manual conveyance of the following categories of baggage:

   -- CT cleared baggage—manual conveyance to SWA-designated baggage make-up staging area

   -- CT alarmed baggage—manual conveyance to TSA-designated manual screening staging area

   -- CT baggage with unknown status—manual conveyance to TSA-designated manual screening staging area

   -- Unscreened baggage—manual conveyance to TSA-designated manual screening staging area

   -- Baggage stranded within TSA-equipment (by TSA)—manual conveyance to TSA-designated manual screening staging area

• **Startup Procedure Once Power Restored.** The procedure is as follows:

1. Port ESE / Facilities shall notify the BHS operator that utility power has been restored and is available. Any limitations to the amount of utility power that is available for the BHS shall be clearly stated. The BHS operator will communicate with SWA staff to clear the limited conveyor system of bags. When this is completed, a controlled shut-down of the limited operation conveying system shall occur. The BHS operator will coordinate with TSA, which shall be solely responsible for re-starting the CTs and MUX interface as described above. The BHS operator shall
follow the operations manual for the formal re-start of the in-line EDS once the manual clearing of bags (described above) has been successfully completed and the TSA has formally communicated to the BHS operator that all TSA-furnished equipment is up and operational.

2. The BHS operator will communicate with the Port MOD, SWA, and TSA in advance of re-starting the system to confirm that all supporting systems are ready.

3. BHS startup after a long-term power outage will need to follow the following procedure:
   -- The BHS workstation is powered up.
   -- The main control processors located in the BHS control room will be powered up.
   -- When the BHS workstation has booted up and the system graphic display application is running, the BHS system can be started normally.

E.3.7 TSA Protocols When CT Down

TSA protocols to be followed when one, two, or three or four CTs experience equipment failure are described below.

- One CT Down. The operational requirements, CT equipment failure – notification procedures, and CT programming protocols to be followed when one CT experiences equipment failure are summarized below:

  1. Operational Requirements. Design modeling indicates that three CTs should handle normal operations in the near term. SWA indicates that it is currently documenting peak hour bag flows of 1,100 bags per hour. Peak period throughput requirements may require modified system programming in future years. The BHS operator shall carefully monitor throughput demand and performance during the first year of operation and regularly communicate findings with the Port, SWA, and the BHS contractor. For a period of one year, the BHS contractor shall modify the BHS programming as required to maintain throughput rates and system functionality in conformance with the specifications.

  2. CT Equipment Failure – Notification Procedures. The BHS operator shall immediately notify TSA, SWA, and the Port ESE of TSA CT equipment failures. TSA personnel will require immediate notification with as much information as possible to assist them with evaluating potential changes to TSA staffing requirements. TSA equipment maintenance staff will also need to be contacted immediately and their response time
will be critical to restore optimal throughput for the system to maintain SWA operations.

3. **CT Programming Protocols.** The BHS operator shall immediately notify TSA, SWA, and the Port ESE of operational demands necessitating CT programming changes. As stated above, the BHS contractor shall be solely responsible for the modification of the in-line EDS programming for a period of one year in conformance with the specifications. When the BHS operator assumes responsibility for system programming, it shall be responsible for performing any programming changes. In all instances, any proposed programming changes affecting the CTs shall be formally communicated with TSA before the changes occur. TSA shall be responsible for coordinating communications between the EDS vendor, FSE representatives, the Port, and the BHS operator.

- **Two CTs Down.** The operational requirements, CT equipment failure – notification procedures, and CT programming protocols to be followed when two CTs experience equipment failure are summarized below:
  
  1. **Operational Requirements.** Design phase modeling indicated that a certain percentage of bags shall need to be diverted directly to ETD to avoid excessive dieback and meet the 10-minute elapsed time processing requirement during peak periods. The BHS contractor and the BHS operator shall program the system to perform the diversion of baggage as required to maintain throughput and avoid dieback.
  
  2. **CT Equipment Failure – Notification Procedures.** See above (TSA protocols for EDS operation with one CT unit down).
  
  3. **CT Programming Protocols.** See above (TSA protocols for EDS operation with one CT unit down).

- **Three or Four CTs Down.** See description above (TSA protocols for EDS operation with two CT units down). Programming shall be performed by the BHS contractor to address the requirements for increasing the divert percentage of baggage sent directly to ETD for manual inspection.